

# FORD **ECOSPORT** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2018

All rights reserved.

Part Number: KNIJ-19A321-ZFA 201806 20180717120717

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**



# Table of Contents

## Introduction

About This Manual .....	7
Symbols Glossary .....	7
Data Recording .....	9
Perchlorate .....	11
Ford Credit .....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	12
Special Notices .....	12
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	13
Export Unique Options .....	14

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	15
----------------------------------	----

## Child Safety

General Information .....	16
Installing Child Restraints .....	17
Booster Seats .....	23
Child Restraint Positioning .....	25
Child Safety Locks .....	27

## Seatbelts

Principle of Operation .....	28
Fastening the Seatbelts .....	29
Seatbelt Height Adjustment .....	31
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime .....	31
Seatbelt Reminder .....	32
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance .....	34
Seatbelt Extension .....	34

## Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™ .....	35
-------------------------------	----

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation .....	36
------------------------------	----

Driver and Passenger Airbags .....	37
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	38
Side Airbags .....	40
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags .....	42
Safety Canopy™ .....	42
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	44
Airbag Disposal .....	45

## Keys and Remote Controls

Principle of Operation .....	46
General Information on Radio Frequencies .....	46
Remote Control .....	46
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	50

## MyKey™

Principle of Operation .....	51
Creating a MyKey .....	52
Programming a MyKey .....	53
Clearing All MyKeys .....	53
Checking MyKey System Status .....	53
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	54
MyKey — Troubleshooting .....	54

## Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking .....	55
Keyless Entry .....	58
Tailgate .....	60

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	62
Anti-Theft Alarm .....	64

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	66
Audio Control .....	66
Voice Control .....	67
Cruise Control .....	67

# Table of Contents

---

Information Display Control .....	67	Air Vents .....	101
Heated Steering Wheel .....	67	Manual Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC) .....	102
<b>Wipers and Washers</b>		Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC) .....	103
Windshield Wipers .....	69	Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC) .....	105
Autowipers .....	69	Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC) .....	106
Windshield Washers .....	71	Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC) .....	107
Rear Window Wiper and Washers .....	72	Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC) .....	107
<b>Lighting</b>		Heated Exterior Mirrors .....	107
General Information .....	73	Cabin Air Filter .....	108
Lighting Control .....	73	<b>Seats</b>	
Autolamps .....	74	Sitting in the Correct Position .....	109
Instrument Lighting Dimmer .....	75	Head Restraints .....	109
Headlamp Exit Delay .....	75	Manual Seats .....	111
Daytime Running Lamps .....	76	Power Seats .....	113
Front Fog Lamps .....	76	Rear Seats .....	116
Direction Indicators .....	77	Heated Seats .....	119
Interior Lamps .....	77	<b>Auxiliary Power Points</b>	
Ambient Lighting .....	78	Auxiliary Power Points .....	120
<b>Windows and Mirrors</b>		<b>Storage Compartments</b>	
Power Windows .....	79	Center Console .....	122
Exterior Mirrors .....	80	Glasses Holder .....	122
Interior Mirror .....	81	<b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b>	
Moonroof .....	81	General Information .....	123
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>		Ignition Switch .....	123
Gauges .....	83	Push Button Ignition Switch .....	124
Warning Lamps and Indicators .....	84		
Audible Warnings and Indicators .....	87		
<b>Information Displays</b>			
General Information .....	88		
Trip Computer .....	91		
Information Messages .....	91		
<b>Climate Control</b>			
Principle of Operation .....	101		

# Table of Contents

---

Starting a Gasoline Engine .....	126
Engine Block Heater .....	127
Automatic Engine Shutdown .....	128

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop .....	129
-----------------------	-----

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions .....	131
Fuel Quality - Gasoline .....	131
Fuel Filler Funnel Location .....	132
Running Out of Fuel .....	132
Refueling .....	134
Fuel Consumption .....	136

## Engine Emission Control

Emission Law .....	138
Catalytic Converter .....	139

## Transmission

Automatic Transmission .....	142
------------------------------	-----

## Four-Wheel Drive

Using Four-Wheel Drive .....	146
------------------------------	-----

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation .....	150
Using Traction Control .....	150

## Brakes

General Information .....	151
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes .....	151
Parking Brake .....	152
Hill Start Assist .....	152

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation .....	154
Using Stability Control .....	154

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation .....	155
Rear Parking Aid .....	155
Rear View Camera .....	156

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation .....	160
Using Cruise Control .....	160

## Driving Aids

Blind Spot Information System .....	162
Cross Traffic Alert .....	163
Steering .....	166

## Load Carrying

Luggage Anchor Points .....	167
Rear Under Floor Storage .....	167
Luggage Covers .....	167
Roof Racks and Load Carriers .....	168
Load Limit .....	169

## Towing

Towing a Trailer .....	174
Trailer Sway Control .....	174
Recommended Towing Weights .....	175
Essential Towing Checks .....	176
Towing Points .....	178
Transporting the Vehicle .....	179
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels .....	180

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In .....	181
Economical Driving .....	181
Cold Weather Precautions .....	181
Driving Through Water .....	181
Floor Mats .....	182

## Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance .....	183
---------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

Hazard Flashers .....	184
Fuel Shutoff .....	184
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	185
Post-Crash Alert System .....	188

## Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need .....	189
In California (U.S. Only) .....	190
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only) .....	191
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only) .....	192
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada .....	192
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature .....	194
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only) .....	194
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only) .....	194

## Fuses

Fuse Box Locations .....	196
Fuse Specification Chart .....	196
Changing a Fuse .....	203

## Maintenance

General Information .....	205
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	205
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	206
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L .....	207
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L .....	208
Engine Oil Check .....	208
Oil Change Indicator Reset .....	209
Engine Cooling Fan .....	210
Engine Coolant Check .....	210
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check .....	214

Brake Fluid Check .....	214
Washer Fluid Check .....	215
Changing the 12V Battery .....	215
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	217
Changing the Wiper Blades .....	217
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	218
Removing a Headlamp .....	220
Changing a Bulb .....	220
Bulb Specification Chart .....	229
Changing the Engine Air Filter .....	230
Drive Belt Routing - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	230
Drive Belt Routing - 2.0L .....	231

## Vehicle Care

General Information .....	232
Cleaning Products .....	232
Cleaning the Exterior .....	233
Waxing .....	234
Cleaning the Engine .....	235
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades .....	235
Cleaning the Interior .....	236
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens .....	236
Cleaning Leather Seats .....	237
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	237
Cleaning the Wheels .....	237
Vehicle Storage .....	238
Body Styling Kits .....	240

## Wheels and Tires

General Information .....	241
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	243
Tire Care .....	249
Using Summer Tires .....	264
Using Snow Chains .....	264
Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	265
Lug Nuts .....	269

# Table of Contents

---

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.0L .....	270
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	271
Transmission Specifications - 2.0L .....	272
Transmission Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	273
Motorcraft Parts - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	274
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L .....	275
Vehicle Identification Number .....	276
Vehicle Certification Label .....	277
Transmission Code Designation .....	277
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	278
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L .....	281

## Audio System

General Information .....	286
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC .....	286
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	289
USB Port .....	290

## SYNC™

General Information .....	292
Using Voice Recognition .....	293
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone .....	295
SYNC™ Applications and Services .....	296
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player .....	300
SYNC™ Troubleshooting .....	301

## SYNC™ 3

General Information .....	309
Home Screen .....	319
Using Voice Recognition .....	319
Entertainment .....	325
Phone .....	335
Navigation .....	341

Apps .....	351
Settings .....	354
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting .....	368

## Accessories

Accessories .....	381
-------------------	-----

## Ford Protect

Ford Protect .....	383
--------------------	-----

## Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information .....	385
Normal Scheduled Maintenance .....	388
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance .....	391
Scheduled Maintenance Record .....	392

## Appendices

End User License Agreement .....	403
Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	428
Type Approvals .....	429



# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

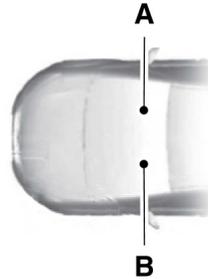
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system

# Introduction



Brake system



Flammable



Cabin air filter



Front airbag



Check fuel cap



Front fog lamps



Child safety door lock or unlock



Fuel pump reset



Child seat lower anchor



Fuse compartment



Child seat tether anchor



Hazard flashers



Cruise control



Heated rear window



Do not open when hot



Windshield defrosting system



Engine air filter



Interior luggage compartment release



Engine coolant



Jack



Engine coolant temperature



Keep out of reach of children



Engine oil



Lighting control



Explosive gas



Low tire pressure warning



Fan warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Fasten seatbelt



Note operating instructions

# Introduction



Horn control



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Service engine soon



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Hill descent control



Trail control



Windshield wiper system



Windshield wash and wipe

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, (for example, your contact information), to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such

# Introduction

---

as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, such as SYNC Vehicle Health Report or MyFord Mobile App, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries. See **SYNCTM** (page 292).

## Event Data Recording

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle;**

**this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.**

**The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

**This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.**

**Note: Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.**

**To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read**

# Introduction

the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

**Note:** *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See SYNC™ (page 292).*

**Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want**

**Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See SYNC™ (page 292).**

## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

**For more information visit:**

Web Address
<a href="http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate">www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate</a>

## FORD CREDIT

### US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

We offer a number of convenient ways for you to contact us, and to manage your account.

Call 1-800-727-7000.

For more information about Ford Credit and access to Account Manager, go to [www.ford.com/finance](http://www.ford.com/finance).

# Introduction

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

### Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

# Introduction

## On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

## Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

## Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

**Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.**

Your vehicle does not have a snowplowing package.

## Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance

**Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.**

Your vehicle does not have the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile

# Introduction

---

communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

# Environment

---

## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

**For details about Ford Motor Company's sustainability progress and initiatives visit:**

<b>Web Address</b>
<a href="http://www.sustainability.ford.com">www.sustainability.ford.com</a>

# Child Safety

## GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician

(CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

# Child Safety

## Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **General Information** (page 16).

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### Child Seats



E142594

# Child Safety

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

## Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Properly restrain children 12 and under in the rear seat whenever possible.

 **WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.

- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

**Note:** *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*

## Standard safety belts



E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

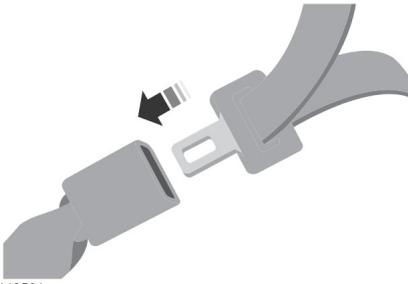
# Child Safety

2. After positioning the child safety seat in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

**Note:** *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

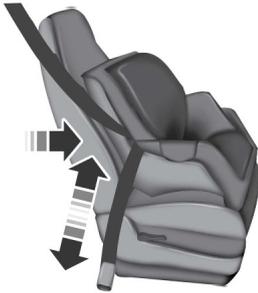
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

# Child Safety

- Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
- Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).



E142534

- Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)



**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



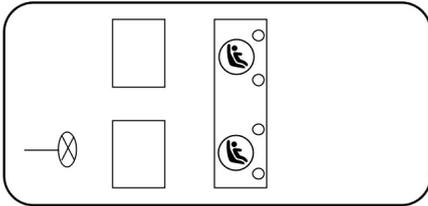
**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.

# Child Safety

## Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



E144054

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat back below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 15.75 in (40 cm) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

# Child Safety

## Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

## Using Tether Straps

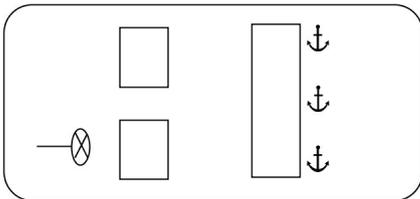


Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

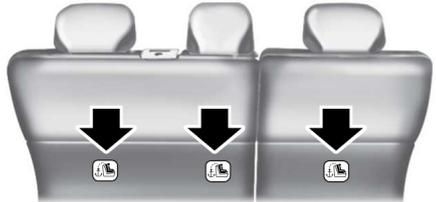


E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

**Note:** *If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, the head restraints can also be removed.



E193589

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

# Child Safety



E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

## BOOSTER SEATS

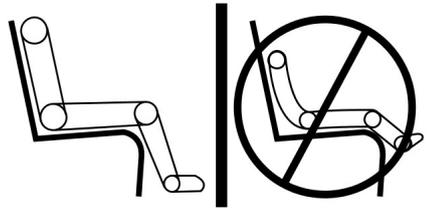


**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age 4 and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb

(45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

# Child Safety

## Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596

# Child Safety



E142597

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

 **WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Recommendations for Attaching Child Safety Restraints for Children

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	Use Any Attachment Method as Indicated Below by X				
		LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt Only
Rear facing child restraint	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child restraint	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child restraint	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child restraint	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

# Child Safety

---

**Note:** *The child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Seats** (page 109).*

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

 **WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E155301

### Rear Left-Hand Door

Turn anti-clockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

### Rear Right-Hand Door

Turn clockwise to lock and anti-clockwise to unlock.

# Seatbelts

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelts could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the seatbelt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



**WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear seatbelts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- Shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, (except driver seatbelt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.

# Seatbelts

- Seatbelt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



• Seatbelt warning light and chime.

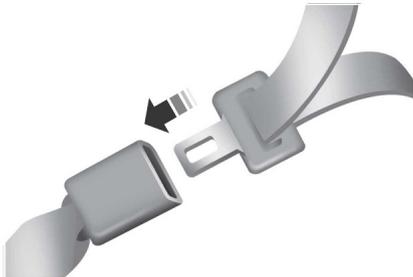


• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners will activate when the Safety Canopy is deployed.

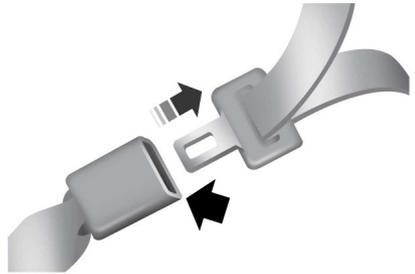
## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



E142587

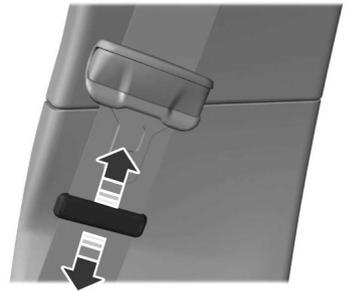
1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure you securely fasten the tongue in the buckle.



E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

## Using the Sliding Clip (If Equipped)



E200788

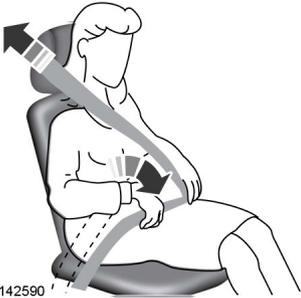
Slide the clip away from the seatbelt tongue so there is no loose webbing when an occupant or child restraint is fastened. You can also use the sliding clip to raise the seatbelt tongue and prevent it from rattling or to ease access to the seatbelt tongue.

# Seatbelts

## Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



E142590

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## Seatbelt Locking Modes



**WARNING:** You must replace the seatbelt if the automatic locking retractor or any other seatbelt function is not operating correctly. Failure to replace the seatbelt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a crash.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver seatbelt has the vehicle sensitive locking mode. The front outboard passenger and rear seat seatbelts have both the vehicle sensitive locking mode and the automatic locking mode.

### Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if you pull the webbing out too quickly. If the seatbelt retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract. If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position. For rear seatbelts, recline the rear seat backrest or push the seat backrest cushion away from the seatbelt. Feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

### Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt automatically pre-locks. The belt retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

# Seatbelts

## When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

Use this mode when you install a child safety seat, except a booster seat, in the passenger front or rear seating positions. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 16).

## How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

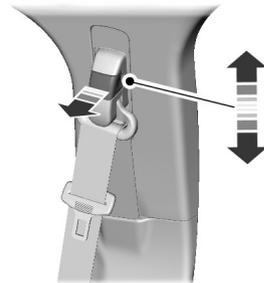
1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E145664

1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an indicator chime will sound if the driver seatbelt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

# Seatbelts

## Conditions of operation

If	Then
The driver seatbelt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and the indicator chime sounds for a few seconds.
The driver seatbelt is buckled while the warning lamp is illuminated and the indicator chime is sounding...	The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime turn off.
The driver seatbelt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime remain off.

## SEATBELT REMINDER (IF

EQUIPPED)

### Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the seatbelt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a chime and illuminate the seatbelt warning lamp when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a seatbelt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid the system turning on the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place on the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

# Seatbelts

If...	Then...
You and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your seatbelts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and an indicator chime sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.
The seatbelt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and an indicator chime sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.

## Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to switch it off, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving a crash. We recommend you leave the system switched on. To reduce the risk of injury, do not switch the system on or off while driving your vehicle.

**Note:** *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1–4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
  - The transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
  - The ignition is off.
  - The driver and front passenger seatbelts are unbuckled.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
  2. Wait until the seatbelt warning lamp turns off (about 1 minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the seatbelt warning lamp turns on.

# Seatbelts

4. While the seatbelt warning lamp is on, buckle and then unbuckle the seatbelt. After Step 4, the seatbelt warning lamp flashes for confirmation.
- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
  - This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child restraint seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat backrest (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Seatbelts** (page 28).

## SEATBELT EXTENSION



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by Ford Motor Company dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.



**WARNING:** Do not use a seatbelt extension with an inflatable seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the belt across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from Ford Motor Company dealers. Only Ford seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelts manufacturer should be used with Ford seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your Ford vehicle restraint system.

# Personal Safety System™

---

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Passenger seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning lamp and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicators.

## **How Does the Personal Safety System Work?**

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

 **WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

 **WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

 **WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

# Supplementary Restraints System

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS



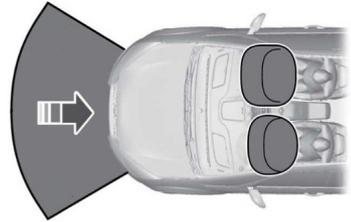
**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).



## Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

# Supplementary Restraints System

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

## Children and Airbags

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E257878

# Supplementary Restraints System

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that will illuminate indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either ON (enabled) or OFF (disabled).

The indicator lamp is located at the overhead console.

**Note:** *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON indicator lamps will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm they are functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the OFF lamp and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the ON lamp and remain illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in a more upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled

# Supplementary Restraints System

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seat back map pocket
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 38).

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 38).

## SIDE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

# Supplementary Restraints System

 **WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front and rear seat backrest.

There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The rear side airbag will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat.

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

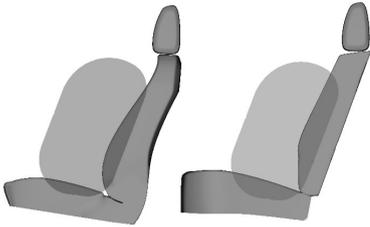


E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks, as well as side airbags inside of each outermost rear seatback.

# Supplementary Restraints System



E256470



Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Side Airbags** (page 40).

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within or under the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

## SAFETY CANOPY™



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Supplementary Restraints System



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

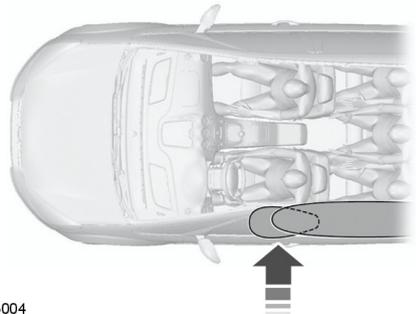


**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

# Supplementary Restraints System

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags and Safety Canopy airbags. Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is switched on.
- The readiness light either flashes or stays lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

# Supplementary Restraints System

---

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

## **AIRBAG DISPOSAL**

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The remote control allows you to:

- Remotely lock or unlock the vehicle doors.
- Unlock the doors without actively using a key or remote control (intelligent access only).
- Activate the panic alarm.

## Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

## Sounding the Panic Alarm

**Note:** *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term **IC** before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 32.8 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

**Note:** *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Replacing the Battery

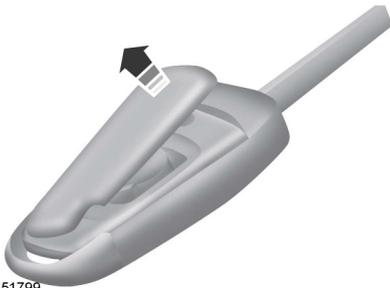
**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries. Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the program med key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.



E241182

1. Insert a screwdriver as far as possible into the slot on the side of the remote control, gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



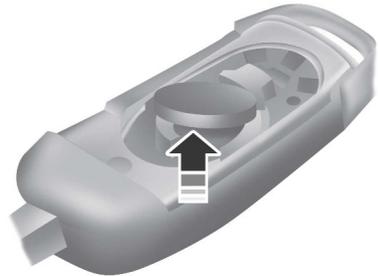
E151799

3. Carefully remove the cover.



E151800

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.



E151801

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing upwards.
6. Replace the battery cover.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Remote Control

### Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)



E241190

The intelligent access keys operate the power locks. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

### Remove Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E241191

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

### Replacing the Battery

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the program med key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 91). See Information Messages (page ?).

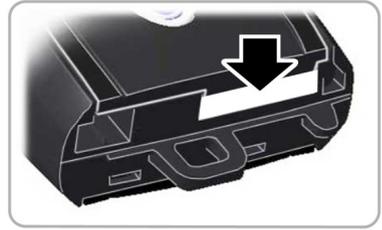
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

## Keys and Remote Controls



E241191

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



E218401

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

## Keys and Remote Controls

---



E218402

3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

### REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 62).

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

**Note:** All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

**Note:** For vehicles with keyless start, when both a MyKey and an admin key are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle to start the engine.

## Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Seatbelt minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system.

## Configurable Settings



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle.

## MyKey™ (If Equipped)

You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key:

- Vehicle speed limits can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when the set vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed sensitive compensated volume (automatic volume control) feature will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to disable emergency assistance or the do not disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

## CREATING A MYKEY

### Vehicles With a Key

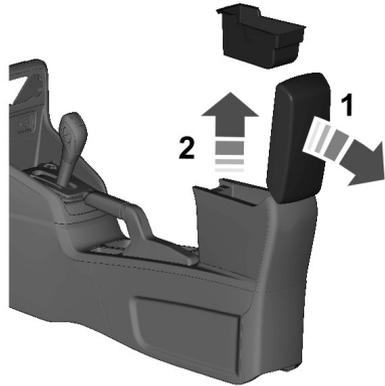
1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.
4. Select **Create MyKey** and press **OK**.
5. When prompted, press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it.

**Note:** Make sure you label the MyKey so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

### Vehicles With Push-Button Start

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.



E246426

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.



E246427

3. Place the key you want to program in the back up slot as shown.
4. Select **Create MyKey** and press **OK**.
5. When prompted, press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it.

**Note:** Make sure you label the MyKey so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

### Optional Settings

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to an optional feature.
4. Press **OK** to make a selection.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.
3. Scroll to **Clear All** and press **OK**.
4. Press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you that all MyKeys have been cleared.

**Note:** When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

### MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

### Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

# MyKey™ (If Equipped)

## Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, please see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

## MYKEY — TROUBLESHOOTING

### All Vehicles

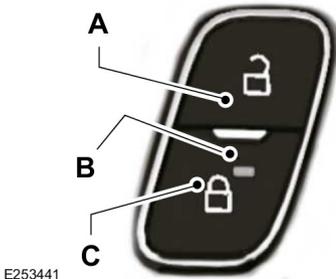
Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The key in the ignition is not an admin key. The key in the ignition is the only key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
I cannot program the optional settings.	The key in the ignition is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 52).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	The key in the ignition is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 52).
I have lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
The MyKey distance does not accumulate.	The MyKey is not being used by the intended user. The MyKeys have been cleared. See <b>Clearing All MyKeys</b> (page 53).

# Doors and Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** All doors will be unlocked 10 seconds after the airbag deploys due to impact and following this the hazard warning flashers will flash.

### Power Door Locks



The power door lock switch is located at the front part of the front inner handles.

A	Press the top button once. The doors will unlock.
B	Door lock indication.
C	Press the button once. The doors will lock.

### Door Lock Indicator

A LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door.

They will remain illuminated for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

### Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle while the ignition is off, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after twenty seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 91).

### Autolock

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all doors and swing gate are closed,
- the ignition is on,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 10 mph (20 km/h)

If you open one or more doors, the autolock feature will repeat when:

- the vehicle speed has been less than 9.3 mph (15 km/h) for at least two seconds; and
- your vehicle meets the autolock conditions again.

### Remote Control

You can use the remote control any time the vehicle is not running.

When the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is at or below 3.1 mph (5 km/h), you can use the remote control to lock and unlock the doors.

### Unlocking the Doors

**Note:** You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

# Doors and Locks

**Note:** When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control switches off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.



Press this button to unlock all doors. Turn signals will flash once.

## Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function to unlock only driver's door at the first press and unlock the others at the second press, if this last was performed within three seconds after the first press. To do so, using the remote control, press and hold lock and unlock buttons together for four seconds. Turn signals will flash twice. To revert, repeat the process. You can also reprogram it using the cluster menu. See **Information Messages** (page 91).

## Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound once and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

**Note:** If hood or luggage compartment is open when you press the button once, the direction indicators will not flash. This indicates your vehicle did not lock. If a rear door, the luggage compartment or the hood is open (on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm) when you press the button again within three seconds, the horn sounds twice and the direction indicators will not flash. This indicates your vehicle locked but there is one or more items open.

**Note:** The direction indicators will flash as locking feedback only when ignition is OFF.

## Automatic Relocking (If Equipped)

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

This feature will be disabled when you receive the vehicle. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

### Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

### Unlocking with the Key

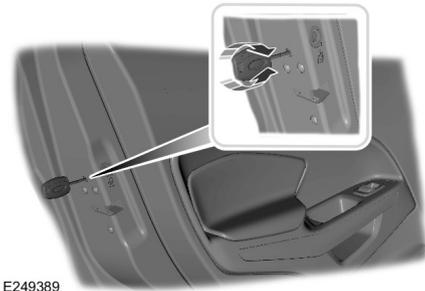
**Note:** If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle. You can unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** When the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

# Doors and Locks



E249389

## Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 12.4 mph (20 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

**Note:** *If you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off with the driver door closed, the doors will not autounlock.*

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

## Smart Unlock

This feature helps to prevent you from locking your key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area. When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open and the ignition is off, the system searches for a keyfob inside your vehicle after you close the last door.

If the system finds a Intelligent Access key (if equipped) or there's a key in the ignition switch, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will sound twice, indicating that a key is inside.

When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open and the ignition is in RUN, the vehicle will unlock all doors and sound the horn twice.

You can switch the horn feedback of this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

## Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control. The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.

After 25 seconds of illumination. The lights will not turn off if:

- You turn them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open. In this case, more of the interior lighting will illuminate and the timer will reset.

## Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off. The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You switch ignition to RUN.

When any door is opened, the exterior lamps will illuminate and remain on for 25 seconds, along with the interior. Whenever a door is opened or closed, the timer will reset.

# Doors and Locks

## KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

### General Information

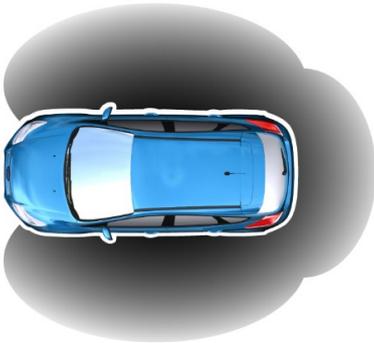
**Note:** The system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

**Note:** If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Locking and unlocking requires a valid intelligent access key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 5 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and from the swing gate handle. You can also use the Intelligent Access key as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 55).

## Locking Using Intelligent Access



E248554

Touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If you do not lock, your vehicle will remain unlocked.

**Note:** Locking touch surfaces are located on each of the front doors.

For central locking and to arm the alarm:

- Touch the locking surface once.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle.

This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked.

**Note:** When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the Intelligent Access is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and swing gate have been locked and that the alarm (if equipped) has been armed.

## Unlocking Using Intelligent Access



E248553

# Doors and Locks

**Note:** Your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of your vehicle battery. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.

With your intelligent access key within 5 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your intelligent access key fob.

**Note:** Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and swing gate have been unlocked and that the alarm (if equipped) has been disarmed.

## Unlocking only Driver Door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked See **Remote Control** (page 46). Note the following:

If the driver door is the first door which is unlocked, the other doors and swing gate will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located at the front part of the front inner handles. Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

If the front passenger door is the first door which is unlocked, all the doors will be unlocked.

## Disabled Keys

Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all Intelligent Access again in order to use them.

To enable all your Intelligent Access, unlock your vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All Intelligent Access will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or your vehicle is started using a valid key.

## Intelligent Access - Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade (If Equipped)



E256649

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

**Note:** Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.

# Doors and Locks

## TAILGATE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



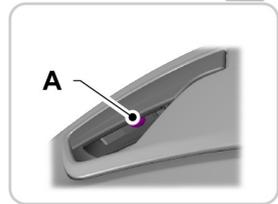
**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the tailgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the tailgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the tailgate to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the tailgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the tailgate.

## Opening the Tailgate



E213377

A tailgate release button.

**Note:** Vehicle without Intelligent Access, you must unlock your vehicle in order to open the tailgate.

**Note:** Vehicle with Intelligent Access you can unlock your vehicle in order to open the tailgate or if an intelligent access key is within 3.3 ft (1 m) of the tailgate, the tailgate unlocks when you press the tailgate release button even if the vehicle is locked.

**Note:** For vehicles with a spare wheel, when you unlatch the tailgate and pull the exterior handle, the mechanism fully opens the tailgate. When closing, the mechanism slowly closes the tailgate.

Press the release button located on the tailgate right-hand tail lamp.

# Doors and Locks

---

## **Closing the Tailgate**

If you had unlocked your vehicle prior to opening the tailgate, it will remain unlocked when you close the tailgate. If the vehicle was locked and you opened the tailgate by approaching the vehicle with the passive key, when the tailgate is closed the vehicle will remain locked.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in engine starting problems and a loss of security protection*

**Note:** *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key when starting your vehicle. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart your vehicle if a problem occurs.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### SecuriLock®

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a coded key programmed to your vehicle is used. Using the wrong key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

### Automatic Arming

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

### Automatic Disarming

When you switch the ignition on, the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used. If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an Authorized Dealer.

### Replacement Keys

**Note:** *Your vehicle comes equipped with two remote controls with a folding key blade or two intelligent access keys.*

The remote controls with a folding key blade functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, as well as a remote control.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters or standard SecuriLock® coded keys are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

# Security

## Programming a Spare Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecurILock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the vehicle immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible.

Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

**Note:** *You can program a maximum of six coded keys to your vehicle.*

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After at least 3 seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.

7. After at least 3 seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If you have successfully programmed the coded key, it will start your vehicle and operate the remote entry system.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8.

If programming remains unsuccessful, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Wait 20 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 9 to program an additional key.

## Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

**Note:** *You can program a maximum of four keys to your vehicle.*

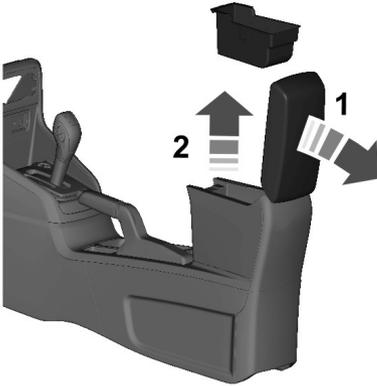
You must have two previously programmed intelligent access keys inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed intelligent access key readily accessible. You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

# Security



E246426

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.



E246427

3. Place the key into the backup slot.
4. Press the push button ignition switch.

5. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
6. Remove the intelligent access key.
7. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key in the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.
8. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
9. Remove the intelligent access key.
10. Wait five seconds, then place the unprogrammed intelligent access key in the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Check that the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat steps 1 through 6. If it still does not work, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM

### Alarm System (If Equipped)

### Perimeter Alarm (if equipped)

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

### Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the tailgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone switches your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.

# Security

---

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Arming the Alarm

With ignition OFF and doors closed, lock the vehicle via Remote Control or exterior door handle. Alarm will be armed after 20 seconds.

Arming the alarm can also be achieved by locking the vehicle using the trim switches while a side door is open and closing all doors, or using the driver's door cylinder. In these two last cases, alarm will be armed after 20 seconds.

**Note:** *Alarm will arm due to an auto-relock. See **Doors and Locks** (page 55).*

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Intelligent Access System

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles with Intelligent Access System

**Note:** *A valid intelligent access key must be located within the detection range of that door for entry.*

Disarm the alarm by performing a intelligent access entry, or switching your vehicle on, or unlocking the vehicle with the remote control.

Disarm the alarm by performing a keyless entry, or switching your vehicle on, or unlocking the vehicle with the remote control.

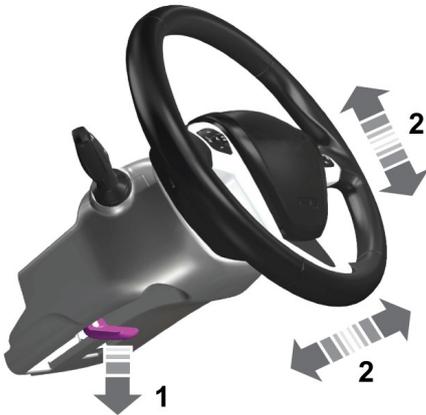
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 109).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



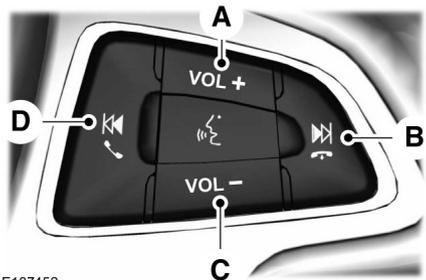
E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

## AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E187452

- A Volume up.
- B Seek up or next.

# Steering Wheel

- C Volume down.
- D Seek down or previous.

## Seek, Next or Previous

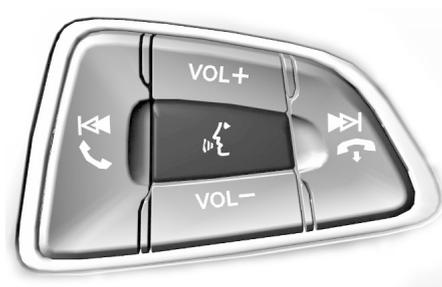
Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

## VOICE CONTROL



E186744

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 319).

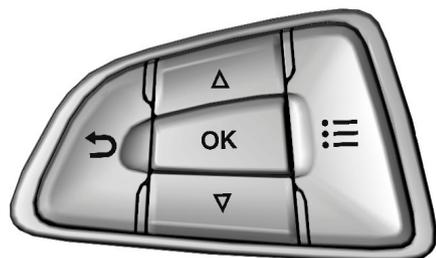
## CRUISE CONTROL



E193646

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 160).

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E246679

See **General Information** (page 88).

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.



Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

**Note:** You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.

# Steering Wheel

---

**Note:** *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

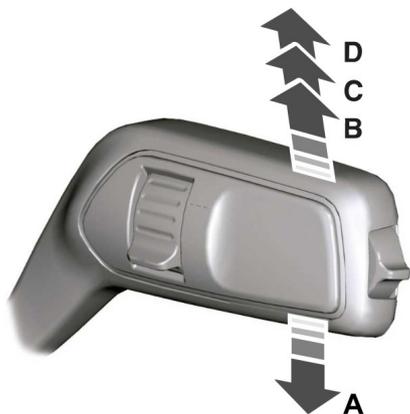
**Note:** *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wiper.



E248785

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

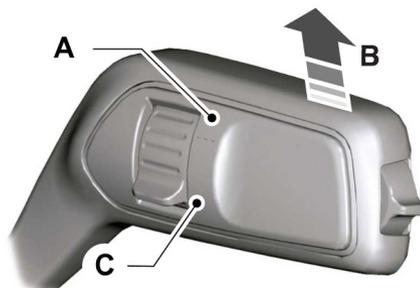
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

## Intermittent Wipe



E242320

- A Shortest wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Longest wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

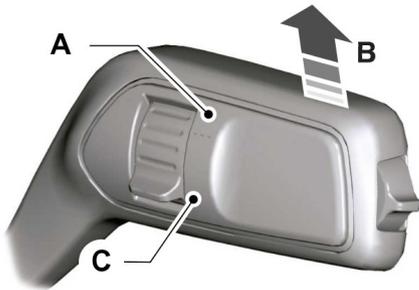
## AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

You can switch autowipers on or off in the information display.

**Note:** If you switch autowipers off in the information display, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.

# Wipers and Washers



E242320

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

**Note:** Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## Settings

To switch autowipers on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Rain Sensing	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter weather conditions could cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 217).

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the information display.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

### Heated Washer Jets (If Equipped)

The system heats the washer jets when the heated windshield is on.

## Settings

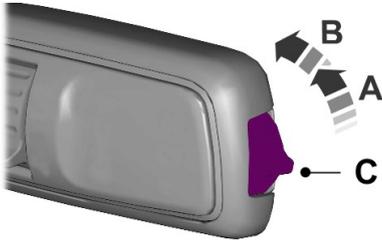
To switch courtesy wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Courtesy Wipe	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

# Wipers and Washers

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Rear Window Wiper



E242324

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

The rear window wiper also turns on when you shift into reverse and the windshield wipers are on.

You can switch reverse wipe off in the information display.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

### Settings

To switch reverse wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reverse Wiper	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

### Rear Window Washer



E242432

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

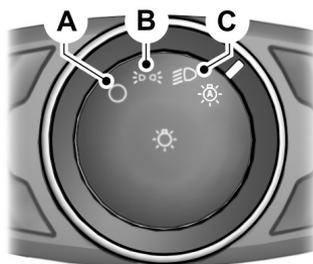
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C Headlamps.

**Note:** Prolonged use of the parking lamps causes the battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** Parking lamps may turn off automatically. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

### Parking Lamps

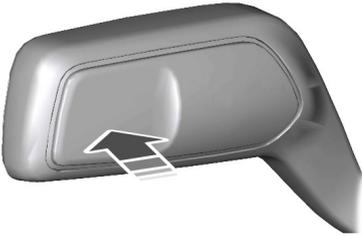
Switch the ignition off.

### Both Sides

Select position B on the lighting control to switch the parking lamps on.

# Lighting

## High Beams



E242674



Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

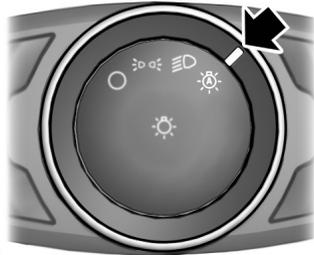
## Headlamp Flasher



E242675

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)



E142451



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.

**Note:** *If you have autolamps switched on you can only switch the high beam headlamps on once the system has turned the headlamps on.*

# Lighting

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps (If Equipped)

When the headlamp switch is in the Autolamps position, the windshield wiper activated exterior lamps will turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

This feature does not turn on the exterior lamps:

- During a single wipe.
- While the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.

**Note:** *If you have autolamps and autowipers switched on the low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the windshield wipers operate continuously.*

## Autolamps Delay (If Equipped)

When the Autolamps have the headlamps and position/parklamps turned on, and the ignition is turned OFF, the headlamps and position/parklamps will remain on for an additional 20 seconds (the autolamp exit delay) or until the Autolamps are disabled.

You can change the delay period in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E132712

Press it repeatedly or press it and hold it until the desired level is reached.

**Note:** *If you disconnect the battery or it loses charge the instrument lighting will return to its brightest setting.*

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

# Lighting

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

### Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. You switch the ignition on.
2. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
3. The lighting control is in the off, parking lamp or autolamps lighting control sensor must be detecting daylight positions.

### Type 2 - Configurable

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. You switch them on in the information display.
2. You switch the ignition on.
3. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
4. The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
5. The lighting control sensor detects daylight, and the headlamps or parking lamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not activate the daytime running lamps, and you can use them to temporarily override autolamp control.

When you switch them off in the information display, the daytime running lamps are off in all lighting control switch positions.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)



E210814

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

**Note:** Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

# Lighting

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E242676

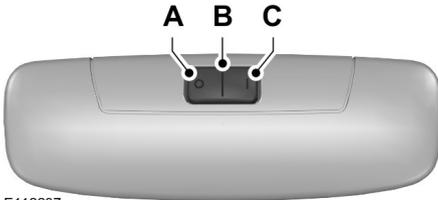


Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Courtesy lamp



E112207

- A Off
- B Door contact
- C On

If you set the switch to position **B**, the courtesy lamp will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

The courtesy lamp will also come on when you switch off the ignition. It will go off automatically after a short time or when you start or restart the engine.

If you set the switch to position **C** with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will come on. It will go off automatically after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

### Reading lamps



E112208

Press the buttons to switch the reading lamps on and off.

# Lighting

---

## Vanity lamp (If Equipped)



E170527

Position the visor downward. Press the button to switch the vanity lamp on and off.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

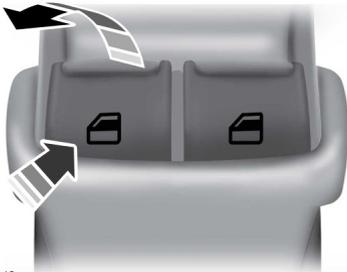


**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

**Note:** If the power window is operated many times on a short period the switch may be inactivated for some moment to avoid overheat on power window system.



E146043

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window. Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window will stop automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window travels past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

**Note:** : Contact an Authorized Dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

The window reaches the desired position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The windows stops if you release the switch before the window closes fully.

### Resetting the One-Touch and Bounce-Back Feature (if equipped)

**Note:** The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory for driver window.

# Windows and Mirrors

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Hold the switch for a few seconds.
3. Release the switch.
4. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
5. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## Window Lock



E144072

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It will illuminate when you lock the rear window controls.

## Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

**Note:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E144073

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Adjustment control
- C Right-hand mirror

To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control will illuminate.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror switch again.

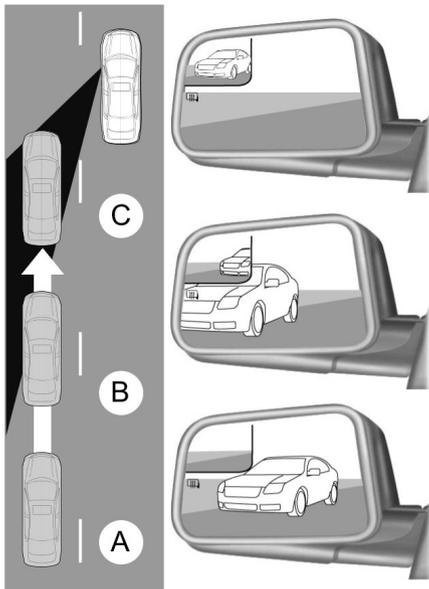
### Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

**Note:** Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outward corner of the exterior mirrors. They can increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If the blind spot mirror does not show any vehicles in its viewing area and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.

# Windows and Mirrors



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

## INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

## Auto-Dimming Mirror (if Equipped)

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

## MOONROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The sunscreen can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is closed.

The moonroof control is located on the overhead console.

# Windows and Mirrors

The moonroof has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop it during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

## Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E147756

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

## Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Pull and hold the SLIDE control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. The first closing operation after the override will disable the anti-pinch function (bounce-back). After, standard operation is restored.

## Venting the Moonroof

With moonroof closed, press and release the front of the switch to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the switch to close the moonroof.

**In case moon roof functional does not work properly, follow this relearning procedure:**

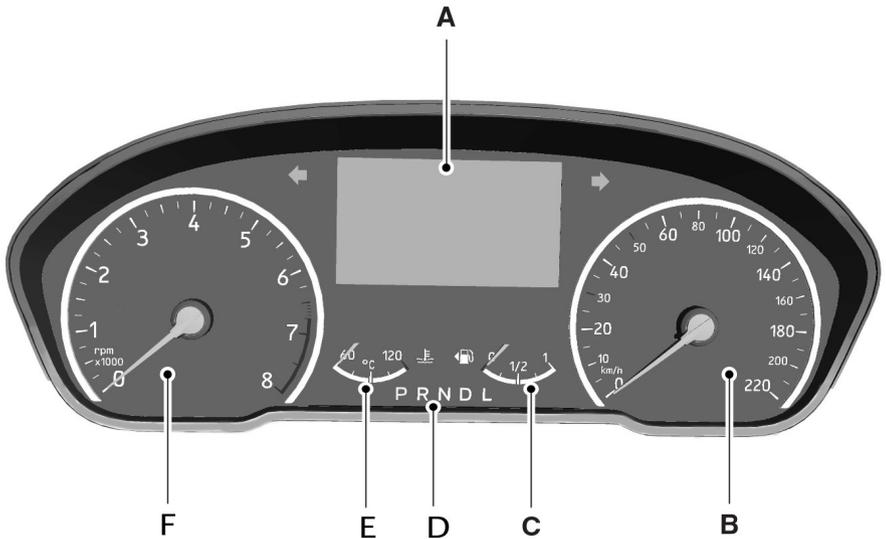
1. Press the moonroof close control to fully close the moonroof. Release and press moonroof close control again until sunroof moves into full vent position.
2. In full vent position, press and hold the moonroof close control for approximately fifteen seconds, until the moonroof moves.
3. Quickly release the moonroof close control, re-press and hold for approximately three seconds, until the moonroof moves to fully closed, fully open and back to fully closed automatically.

Confirm the relearning was successful by opening and closing the sun shade.

The moonroof switch has a two stage operation, half press and full press. All relearning procedure must be done with half press operation.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E257443

- A Information display.
- B Speedometer.
- C Fuel gauge.
- D Gear Indicator (Automatic Transmission only).
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- F Tachometer.

### Information Display

#### Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

#### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

#### Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

#### Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 91).

#### Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 88).

# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

At normal operating temperature the indicator will remain in the center section.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).

**Note:** *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

## Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

## Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Brake System Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If it illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

## Direction Indicator



Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

## Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

## Front Fog Lamp Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

## Battery



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction.

Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

## Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

## Auto Start-Stop (If Equipped)



It illuminates to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

## Service Engine Soon



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board

Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, it illuminates until the engine is cranked and automatically turns off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds it flashes eight times, this indicates that your vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

See **Catalytic Converter** (page 139).

## Powertrain Malfunction



If it illuminates when driving, a powertrain fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon possible.

## Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 208).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**Note:** Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.

**Note:** Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high.

Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).

If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction.

# Instrument Cluster

## Blind Spot (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or a fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is not closed properly.

## Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Stability Control** (page 154).

## Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).  
See **Using Stability Control** (page 154).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Automatic Transmission

Sounds when you open the driver's door and do not move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.

## Key Outside Car

### Vehicles with Intelligent Access System

Sounds when you close the door, the engine is running and the system does not detect a passive key inside your vehicle.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

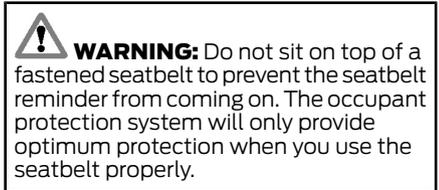
Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder displays and sounds when the fuel level reaches 1/16<sup>th</sup> of the scale or the distance to empty is 37 mi (60 km) or less.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

### Seatbelt Reminder



**Note:** *The seatbelt reminder remains in stand-by mode when the front seatbelts have been fastened. It sounds if either seatbelt is unfastened.*

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds the pre-determined limit and the front seatbelts are unfastened. The chime will stop after a period of time.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

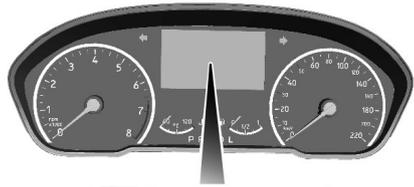


**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

## Information Display Controls



E246680

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left button to exit a submenu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

## Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Trip computer 1 and 2	
Trip 1	
Trip 2	
Reset Individual Values	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reset All</li> <li>Reset Trip Odometer</li> <li>Reset Trip Timer</li> <li>Reset Average Fuel</li> </ul>

# Information Displays

<b>Trip computer 1 and 2</b>	
	Reset Average Speed
Configure View	Set to Default
	Trip Odometer
	Trip Timer
	Average Fuel
	Average Speed
	Distance to Empty
	Instantaneous Fuel

<b>MyView</b>
Digital Speedometer
Speedo/Instant. Fuel
Trip/Audio
Calm Screen

<b>Navigation</b>
Home
Previous Destinations
Favorite Destinations
POI Nearby

<b>Phone</b>
All Calls
Incoming Calls
Outgoing Calls
Missed Calls

# Information Displays

Settings				
Information	Intelligent 4WD			
	MyKey Info			
	Tire Pressure			
	Auto Start/Stop			
Display	Language			
	Distance Unit	L/100 km		
		km/L		
		Miles & Gallons		
	Temperature Unit	Celsius (°C)		
		Fahrenheit (°F)		
	Tire Pressure	psi		
		kPa		
bar				
Driver Assistance	Blind Spot			
	Cross Traffic Alert			
	Rear Parking Aid			
Vehicle Settings	Alarm system	Alarm Settings	All Sensors	
			Perimeter Sensing	
		Ask on Exit		
	Auto Engine Off			
	Chimes	Information		
	Lighting	Autolamp Delay	Off	
			10 Seconds	
			20 Seconds	
			120 Seconds	
	Daytime Running Lights			

# Information Displays

Settings		
	Locks	Autolock
		Autounlock
		Mislock Chirp
		Remote Unlock
		Switches Inhibit
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe
		Rain Sensing
		Reverse Wiper
MyKey	MyKey Info	
	Create MyKey	

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

### All Values

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

### Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

### Instantaneous Fuel (If Equipped)

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

### Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

### Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available.

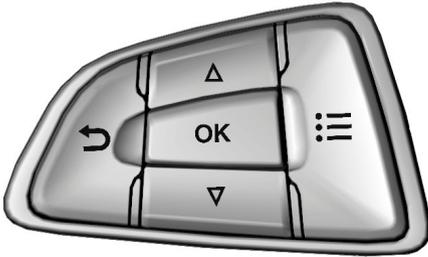
# Information Displays

**Note:** The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.



E246679

## Accessory Power

Message	Action
Full Accessory Power Active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.

## Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Alarm

Message	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 64).
Alarm fault Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm Announcement	

# Information Displays

## Brake System

Message	Action
Check Brake System	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Electrical system overvoltage Stop safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact an authorized dealer.
Battery low See manual	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	Displays if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 265).
Tire Pressure Low Specified:	
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 265).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displays if the system detects a fault with a tire pressure sensor or the spare tire is in use. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 265). If the warning message remains on after you have checked the tire pressures, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Engine

Message	Action
Engine fault Service now	Engine service is required. Contact an authorized dealer.
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperature.
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fuel System

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	Refuel as soon as possible.
Fuel Level Low Distance Metric:##0 Km To Empty	Refuel as soon as possible.
Fuel Level Low Distance Imperial:##0 Miles To Empty	
Fuel Pressure Low	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Water in Fuel Drain Filter	Displays if the system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 152).

# Information Displays

## Keyless Vehicle

Message	Action
No Key Detected	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See <b>Push Button Ignition Switch</b> (page 124).
Switch ignition off.	Displayed as a reminder to turn off the vehicle. See <b>Push Button Ignition Switch</b> (page 124).
To START Press Brake	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Key Not Inside vehicle	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within the vehicle. See <b>Push Button Ignition Switch</b> (page 124).
Key Battery low Replace soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See <b>Remote Control</b> (page 46).

## Lighting

Message	Action
Check Headlamp System See manual	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Maintenance

Message	Action
Brake fluid level low Service now	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 214).
Maintenance Set initial date	Indicates that the vehicle sold date has been successful updated. If this date has not been set, contact your authorized dealer.
Maintenance Set date	Displays when the date and time are not set.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Service Done	Displays when the service interval has been reset.
Maintenance Reminder Set To Off	Displays when the date and time is not set. If the date and time are set and the message remains, contact an authorized dealer.
Service Required	Indicates that your vehicle has reached the estimated time or distance for the scheduled maintenance. Contact an authorized dealer.

### MyKey

Message	Action
Create MyKey	Displays when you are programming a MyKey.
Hold OK to Create MyKey	Displays when you are programming a MyKey.
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Place Key in Backup Location	Displays when you are programming a MyKey and the key is not correctly positioned in the backup slot.
MyKey not Created	Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Speed Limited to avg speed metric:##0 km/h	Displays when starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Speed Limited to avg speed imperial:##0 MPH	
Near Vehicle Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the vehicle speed approaches a preset speed limit.
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and seatbelt reminder is activated.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and you try to switch the parking aid system off.

# Information Displays

## Park Aid

Message	Action
Park Aid Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Aid	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Front Park Aid	
Check Rear Park Aid	
Park Pilot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays when the park pilot system sensors are blocked. See <b>Parking Aids</b> (page 155).
Front Park Pilot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	
Rear Park Pilot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	

## Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Not Applied	Displays as a reminder to apply the parking brake.
Park Brake Not Applied Apply Park Brake	
Brake Applied Power Reduced	Displays if you have not released the parking brake and the vehicle speed reaches 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning message remains on after you have released the parking brake, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Release Park Brake	
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Stability Control

Message	Action
SHIFT SYS FAULT Sport Unavailable Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.
To START Press Clutch	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal.
To START Press Brake and Clutch	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.
No Key Detected	Displays when the system cannot detect a valid key.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Restart Now or Key is Needed	Displays for 20 seconds if you switch the engine off and the system cannot detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

# Information Displays

## Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction Control On	Displays when the traction control system has been switched on.
Traction Control Off	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off.

## Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Service Required	
Transmission Overtemperature Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Displays at low ambient temperatures if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear. Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Press Brake to Unlock Gearshift Lever	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Gearshift Lever Unlocked	Displays when the gearshift lever unlocks.

# Information Displays

---

## Vehicle Settings

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Your vehicle is in transport mode. Some features on your vehicle are not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated Air

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

**Note:** *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the coolant.

### General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Close the windows.

### Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

### Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

### Air Conditioning

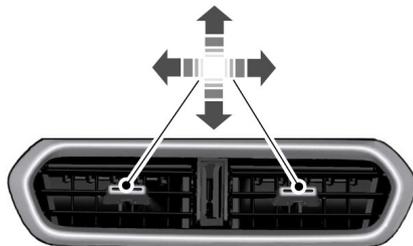
The system directs condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which could cause a small pool of water to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 39°F (4°C).*

**Note:** *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

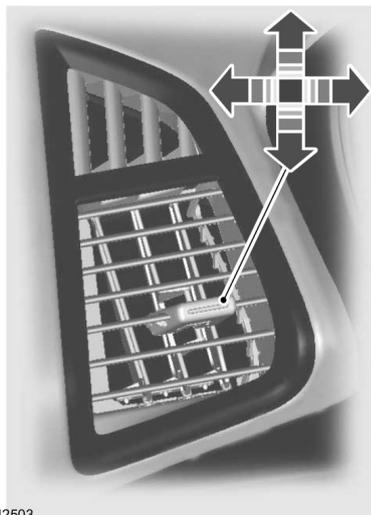
## AIR VENTS

### Center Air Vents



E242504

### Side Air Vents



E242503

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EMTC)

### Switching Climate Control On and Off



### Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Recirculates air to reduce unwanted odors from entering the vehicle.

### Switching Air Conditioning On and Off



### Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Turn the temperature control clockwise to the full heat position to maximize defrosting.

**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost off, the Windshield Wiper De-icer and heated rear window remain on.

### Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

## Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed



Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the fan speed.

## Changing the Direction of Airflow



Directs air through the windshield air vents.

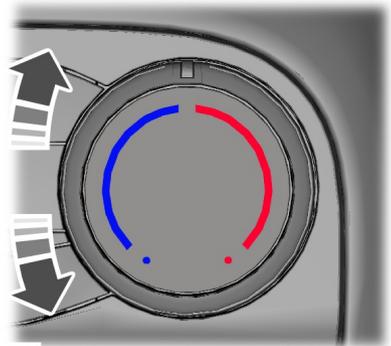


Directs air through the instrument panel air vents.



Directs air through the footwell air vents.

## Adjusting the Temperature



E244106

You can adjust the temperature in small increments.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EATC)

### Switching the Climate Control On and Off



### Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



**Note:** The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

**Note:** Recirculated air could turn off or be prevented from turning on in all air flow modes except maximum cooling to reduce the risk of the windows fogging up. It could also turn on and off when you direct air to the instrument panel or footwell air vents during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

### Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost off, the Windshield Wiper De-icer and heated rear window remain on.

### Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

### Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

**Note:** When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

# Climate Control

## Auto Mode Indicator Status

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The blower motor speed is reduced.</li><li>• Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor.</li><li>• This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.</li></ul>
Two indicators illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The blower motor speed is moderate.</li></ul>
Three indicators illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The blower motor speed is increased.</li><li>• Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior.</li><li>• This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.</li></ul>

## Setting the Blower Motor Speed



**Note:** *Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.*

# Climate Control

## Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



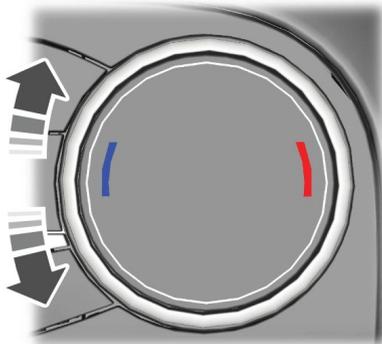
## Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



## Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



## Setting the Temperature



E244115

Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

**Note:** You can adjust the temperature between 59–86°F (15–30°C).

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EATC)

### General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold, air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.

**Note:** When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high, the system temporarily selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

**Note:** When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning turns on and air is directed to the windshield air vents.

# Climate Control

---

## Recommended Settings for Heating

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

**Note:** *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Press **MAX A/C**.

**Note:** *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

## Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EMTC)

### General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

**Note:** *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

**Note:** *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather conditions, direct air to the windshield air vents.*

**Note:** *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

**Note:** *Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.*

### Quickly Heating the Interior

- Select the highest blower motor speed.
- Select the highest temperature.
- Direct air to the footwell air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

- Select a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct air to the footwell and windshield air vents.

# Climate Control

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Select maximum cooling.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Select a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.
- Press A/C.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

## Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

## HEATED REAR WINDOW - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EATC)



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## HEATED REAR WINDOW - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EMTC)



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## Windshield Wiper De-icer (If Equipped)

The windshield wiper de-icer turns on in low temperatures or when you manually switch the heated rear window on.

# Climate Control

---

## CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the center console, on the passenger side.

**Note:** *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 385).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



**WARNING:** Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E249498

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

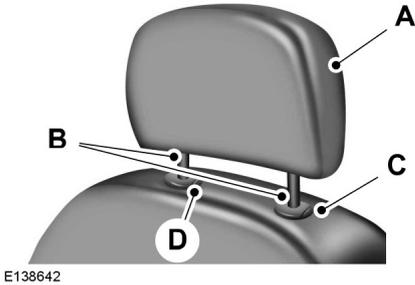
# Seats

**! WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**! WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

## Front Seat Head Restraint

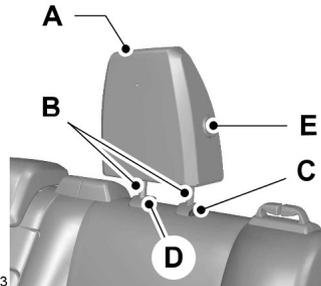


The front seat head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.

- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

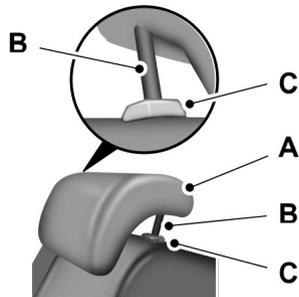
## Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint



The rear seat outermost head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
- E Fold button.

## Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



# Seats

The rear center head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

## Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

## Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

## Tilting the Front Seat Head Restraint (If Equipped)

The front head restraint tilts for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

## Folding the Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button E.
2. Pull the head restraint back up to reset.

## Removing the Head Restraint

### Removing the Front Seat Head Restraint and the Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

### Removing the Rear Seat Center Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

## Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## MANUAL SEATS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

# Seats

**! WARNING:** Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

**! WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

**! WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

## Adjusting the Lumbar Support (if Equipped)



E246429

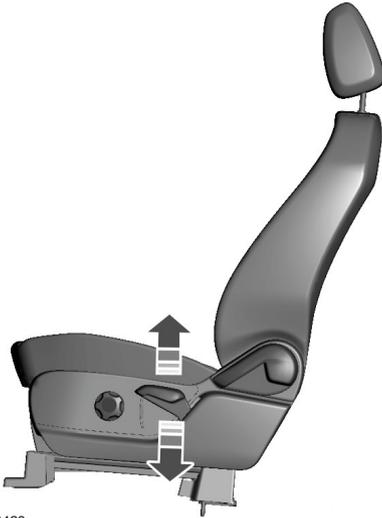
## Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



E253652

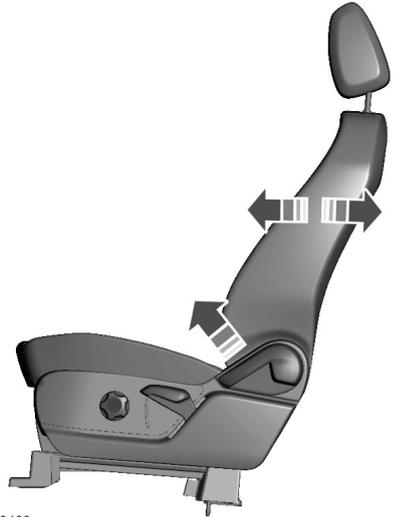
# Seats

## Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat (If Equipped)



E246428

## Recline Adjustment



E246430

## POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

# Seats

## Adjust the Lumbar Support



E246431



E246433

# Seats

## Adjust the Seat Back Recliner



E246432

## Adjust Four Way Position



E246434

# Seats

## REAR SEATS

### Flip and Fold Seat



E253892

With the seat unoccupied, lift the cushion and then fold down the seat back.

### Lifting the Seat Cushion



**WARNING:** Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



E253893

Insert your hand into the pull-strap on the cushion, lift upward on the cushion to flip it forward.

### Lowering the Seat Cushion



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

**Note:** When lowering the cushion, make sure no foreign objects are trapped underneath.

# Seats



E246292

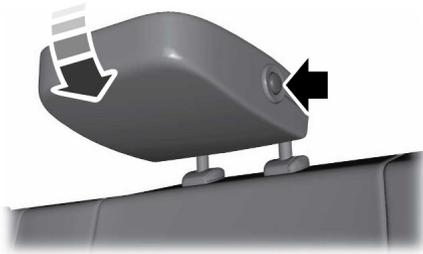
Lower the seat cushion to the full-down position.

## Folding the Seatback Down

**Note:** Do not attempt to fold the rear seat backrest forward before flipping the seat cushion up and out from underneath it.

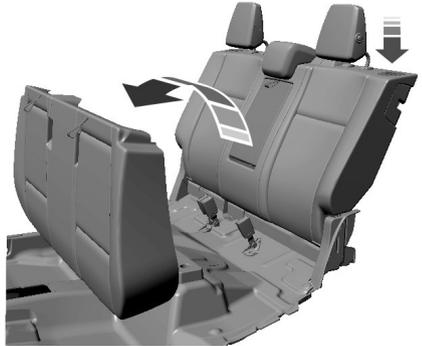
**Note:** When folding the seatback, make sure no foreign objects are trapped underneath.

**Note:** Do not attempt to fold the rear seat backrest forward before lowering the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 109).



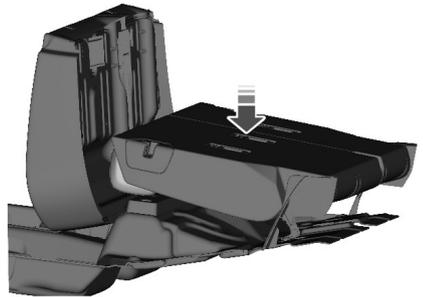
E193964

Before folding the rear row seats, fold the head restraint down by pushing the button located on the side of the head restraint.



E246356

When the seatback is in the upright and locked position, depress the back-latch release button.



E246360

Fold the seatback forward until it rests on the head restraints.

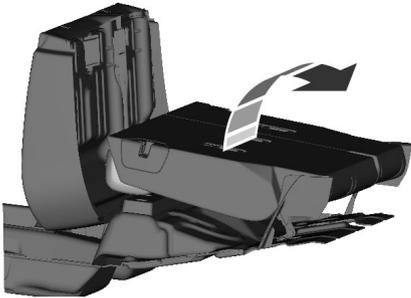
# Seats

## Folding the Seatback Upright



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

**Note:** Make sure that the seat cushion and backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.



E246361

With the seat free of foreign objects, lift the seatback upright.



Secure the seatback in a fully upright and latched position, the latches will be secured to the side-pillar mounted strikers.

## Rear Seat Armrest (if equipped)



E246370



E246371

# Seats



E246372

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest.

## HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point



E245745



**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

This damages the power point and may blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the front of the center console.
- Next to the rear seat on the right hand side.

## 110 Volt AC Power Point (if Equipped)

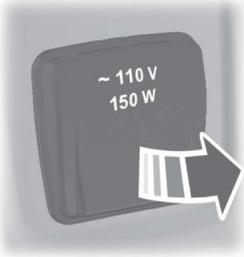


**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

# Auxiliary Power Points

---



E143941

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, the power point cover may open to the right or upward.

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

# Storage Compartments

---

## CENTER CONSOLE



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- front cup holders
- storage compartments under armrest with pen holder and removable tray
- storage compartments for mobile phone in front of shifter lever
- auxiliary input jack (if equipped)
- USB (if equipped)
- auxiliary power point.

## GLASSES HOLDER (IF EQUIPPED)



E150040

The glasses must be placed in the glasses holder with the lenses facing downward. If not, the glasses can fall down when the glasses holder is open.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (10 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

When you start the engine, do not press the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

**Note:** Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

**Note:** Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

### Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **O**.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

### Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

**Note:** The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

**Note:** The ignition automatically switches off when you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge.

**Note:** A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode)



E144447

Press the button once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the button again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to turn your vehicle off completely.

## Starting the Engine

### Vehicles with a Manual Transmission

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start stops the engine cranking and returns the ignition to on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Press the button.

### Vehicles with an Automatic Transmission

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start stops the engine cranking and returns the ignition to on.

1. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Press the button.

## Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine



E246426

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.



E246427

3. Place the key into the backup slot.

4. With the key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, releasing the clutch pedal or button during engine start stops the engine cranking and returns the ignition to on. A message appears in the display.

When the engine does not crank when the starter button is pressed:

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual transmission) and brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic transmission).
2. Press the button until the engine starts.

## Stopping the Engine with the Vehicle Stationary

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits warning lamps and indicators turn off.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, put the transmission selector lever in position **P**.

Briefly press the button.

## Stopping the Engine When the Vehicle is Moving

**Note:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

- Press and hold the button for at least one second or press it three times within two seconds.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

- Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position (vehicles with a manual transmission) or position **N** (vehicles with an automatic transmission) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
- When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position (vehicles with a manual transmission) or position **N** (vehicles with an automatic transmission) and switch the ignition off.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral.

**Note:** *You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.*

## Cold or Hot Engine

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Start the engine.

### All Vehicles

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait ten seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below  $-13.0^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

## Fuel Flooded Engine

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

### All Vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting minimizes vehicle emissions and maximizes cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed varies depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

## Failure to Start

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when you full depress the clutch pedal with the ignition key in position **III**, follow this procedure:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.



**WARNING:** Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

**Note:** The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Interacting with your vehicle, for example pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE SHUTDOWN

For vehicles with a keyless ignition, this automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Start your vehicle as normal.

### Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown.*

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## AUTO-START-STOP

The system helps reduce fuel consumption by automatically shutting off and restarting the engine while your vehicle is stopped. The engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal. In some situations, your vehicle may restart automatically, for example:

- To maintain interior comfort
- To recharge the battery

**Note:** *Power assist steering is turned off when the engine is off.*



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Make sure you shift into park (P) for vehicles with an automatic transmission. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Before opening the hood or performing any maintenance, fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N) and switch the ignition off.



**WARNING:** Always switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle. If the ignition is switched on an automatic restart may occur at any time.



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop system status is available at a glance within the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

## Enabling Auto-Start-Stop

The system is automatically enabled every time you start your vehicle if the following conditions are met:

- The Auto-Start-Stop button is not pressed (not illuminated).
- Your vehicle exceeds an initial speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) after the vehicle has been initially started.
- Your vehicle is stopped.
- Your foot is on the brake pedal.
- The transmission is in drive (D).
- The driver's door is closed.
- There is adequate brake vacuum.
- The interior compartment has been cooled or warmed to an acceptable level.
- The front windshield defroster is off.
- The steering wheel is not being turned.
- The vehicle is not on a steep road grade.
- The battery is within optimal operating conditions (battery state of charge and temperature in range).
- The engine coolant is at operating temperature.
- Elevation is below approximately 10,000 ft (3,048 m).
- Ambient temperature is moderate.



The green Auto-Start-Stop indicator light on the instrument cluster will illuminate to indicate when the automatic engine stop occurs.



If the instrument cluster is equipped with a grey Auto-Start-Stop indicator light, it is illuminated when automatic engine stop is not available due to one of the above noted conditions not being met.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

---

## Automatic Engine Restart

Any of the following conditions will result in an automatic restart of the engine:

- Your foot is removed from the brake pedal.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- You press the accelerator and the brake pedal at the same time.
- The driver seatbelt becomes unfastened or the driver door is ajar.
- The transmission is moved from drive (D).
- Your vehicle is moving.
- The interior compartment does not meet customer comfort when air conditioning or heat is on.
- Fogging of the windows could occur and the air conditioning is on.
- The battery is not within optimal operating conditions.
- The maximum engine off time is exceeded.
- When you press the Auto-Start-Stop button while the engine is stopped automatically.
- The heated windshield is turned on.

Any of the following conditions may result in an automatic restart of the engine:

- The blower fan speed is increased or the climate control temperature is changed.
- An electrical accessory is turned on or plugged in.

## Disabling Auto-Start-Stop

Press the Auto-Start-Stop button located on the center console to switch the system off. The button will illuminate. The system will only be deactivated for the current ignition cycle. Press the button again to restore Auto-Start-Stop function.

If your vehicle is in an Auto-Start-Stop state and you shift the transmission to reverse while the brake is not depressed, a message telling you to press the brake will appear. You must press the brake pedal within 10 seconds, or a shift to park and a manual restart will be required.

**Note:** *If the Shift to P, Restart Engine message appears and the amber Auto-Start-Stop indicator light is flashing, automatic restart is not available. The vehicle must be restarted manually. See **Information Displays** (page 88).*

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

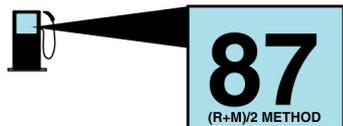
Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

### Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

# Fuel and Refueling

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 174).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance. For additional information, refer to [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

**Note:** *Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** *If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.*

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

# Fuel and Refueling

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 132).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



E157452

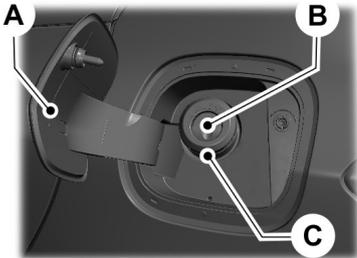
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

# Fuel and Refueling

## REFUELING

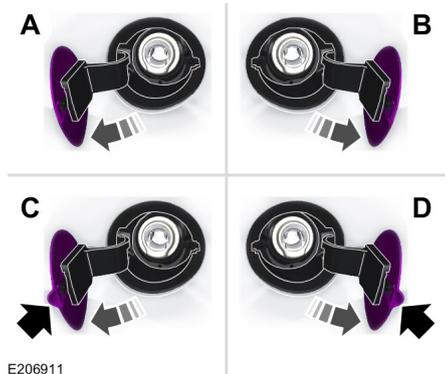
### Refueling System Overview



E267248

- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



E206911

- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

### Refueling Your Vehicle



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

# Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

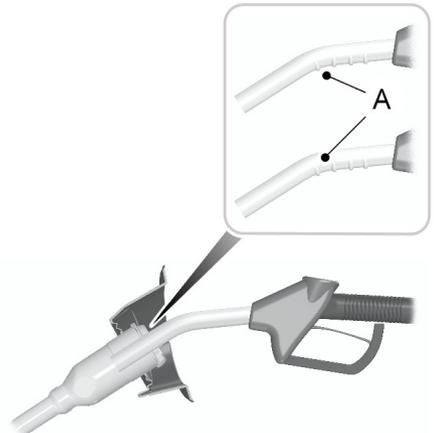
**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

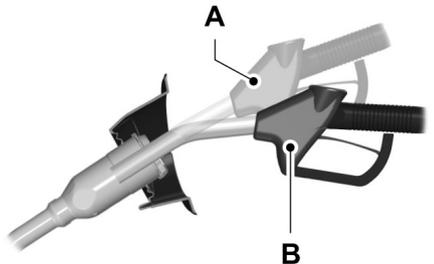
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



E139202

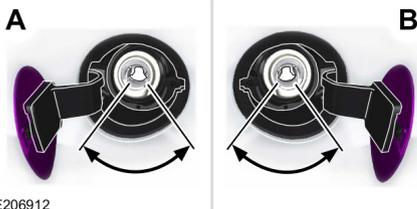
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



E139203

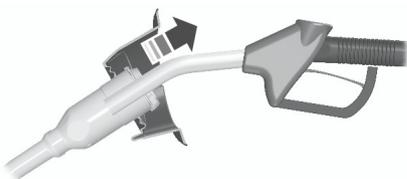
4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

# Fuel and Refueling



E206912

5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 132). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** *The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

### Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Your dealer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

### Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

# Fuel and Refueling

---

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- The maximum tank capacity, during fueling, is reached when the pump is automatically cut off for the second time.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

## Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Trip Computer** (page 91).

The first 1,000 mi (1,500 km) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,000 km).

## Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures.
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

# Engine Emission Control

## EMISSION LAW



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel

Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.

# Engine Emission Control

- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

**Note:** *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

**Note:** *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Catalytic Converter** (page 139).
- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

# Engine Emission Control

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

## On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 134).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

## Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

# Engine Emission Control

---

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Make sure you shift into park (P) for vehicles with an automatic transmission. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

**Note:** Under certain conditions you may not be able to shift out of park unless the Intelligent Access Key is inside the vehicle.

### Selector Lever Positions

- P Park
- R Reverse
- N Neutral
- D Drive
- S Sport mode

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

Brake needs to be depressed to move out of (P).

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

### Park (P)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked.

You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

**Note:** A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).

### Reverse (R)

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward

### Neutral (N)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked.

You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through all forward gears.

Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

### Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S). In Sport mode the transmission will select the optimum gear for best performance. This gear selection is typically lower than that of drive (D) and the shifts are faster.

# Transmission

## SelectShift™ Automatic Transmission

This feature gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

Downshifts are allowed unless the engine speed after the shift exceeds the maximum allowable limit.

In order to prevent engine stalls, SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds.

**Note:** *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit, unless the accelerator pedal is at full travel.

Take notice of the shift indicator lamp, which alerts you when to shift to make sure you achieve the highest level of efficiency and fuel economy.

**If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever, press the + toggle switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate SelectShift.**



E250374

**If equipped with steering wheel paddles, pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.**

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



E144821

SelectShift in drive (D):

- Provides temporary manual control of the gear selection when a more demanding response is required (for example, when towing or overtaking). This mode holds a selected gear for a temporary period of time dependent on driver input (for example, steering wheel or accelerator pedal input).

# Transmission

SelectShift in sport (S):

- Provides manual gear selection without a time out period.

To exit SelectShift mode:

- If in drive (D), move the selector to sport (S) and then back to drive (D). If in sport (S), move the selector to drive (D) and then back to sport (S).

The instrument cluster displays your current gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (too low or too high engine speed), the current gear flashes three times.

**Note:** At full accelerator pedal travel, the transmission may automatically downshift for maximum performance.

## Emergency Park Position Release Lever

**Note:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



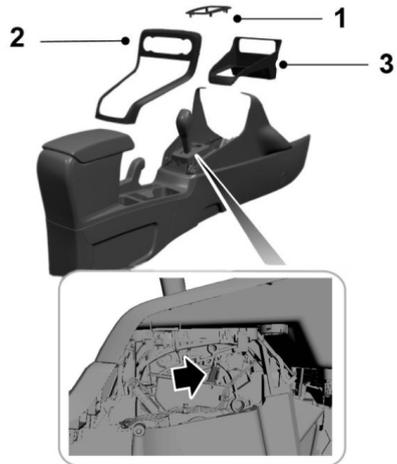
**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** For some markets this feature will be disabled.

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the transmission selector lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 196).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P).



E273544

1. Remove the shifter ring.
2. Remove the climate control bezel without removing the wiring harness.

# Transmission

---

3. Remove the console.
4. Locate the lever and pull it out of the park (P) position.

## **Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning**

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

## **If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow**

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

Four-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The 4WD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

**Note:** *Your 4WD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The 4WD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.*

**Note:** *A warning message will be displayed in the information display when an 4WD system fault is present. See **Information Messages** (page 91). An 4WD system fault will cause the 4WD system to default to front-wheel drive only mode. When this warning message is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *A warning message will be displayed in the information display if the 4WD system has overheated. See **Information Messages** (page 91). This condition may occur if the vehicle was operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal 4WD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine has been restarted and the 4WD system has adequately cooled, the warning message will turn off and normal 4WD function will return.*

Do not use a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided. If the mini-spare tire is installed, the 4WD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. This condition will be indicated by a warning in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 91). If there is a warning message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. It is recommended to reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the 4WD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the 4WD system.

### Driving In Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive (4WD)



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

4WD vehicles are equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

# Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

## Basic operating principles in special conditions

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

## If Your Vehicle Goes Off the Edge of the Pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

## Emergency Maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle (i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Do not drive your 4WD vehicle in deep sand. This will cause the 4WD system to overheat. After the system has cooled down, normal 4WD function will return.

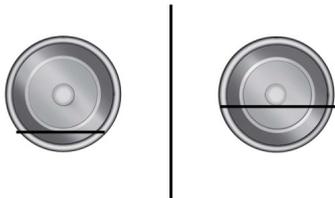
Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### Mud and Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



E142667

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.*

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and 4WD PTU (Power Transfer Unit) lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.

### Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

**Note:** *Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

### **Maintenance and Modifications**

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lowering kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggable racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to off-highway usage.

# Traction Control (If Equipped)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations for example, stuck in snow or mud, turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Depending on the type of system you have on your vehicle, you can either turn the system off using the information display or by pressing the button.

### Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls (If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **Principle of Operation** (page 150).

### Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel.

Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the traction control system off, stability control remains fully active.

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



**WARNING:** If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.



The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you turn the traction control system off.

When you turn the traction control system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

### Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake.

Check the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

### Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

### Anti-lock Brake System (if Equipped)

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 237).*

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 84).

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.

# Brakes

- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

## PARKING BRAKE

### Vehicles With Automatic Transmission



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

### Vehicles With Manual Transmission



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

## All Vehicles

**Note:** Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

## HILL START ASSIST



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

# Brakes

---

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

**Note:** *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

## Switching the System On and Off

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

# Stability Control (If Equipped)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic Stability Control



**WARNING:** The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

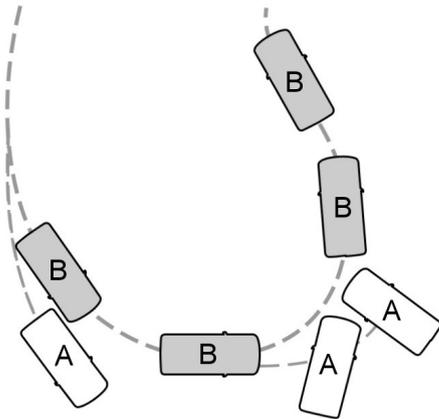
### Stability Control Warning Lamp



Flashes during operation. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 84).

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control system is disabled when the transmission selector lever is in position **R**. You can turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).



E72903

- A Without ESC.
- B With ESC.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices installed around the rear fascia such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks or certain add-on devices installed around the front fascia such as license plate brackets or frames, bumper covers, bumper guards or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.*

**Note:** *In these cases the add-on devices must be removed in order to prevent the false beeps.*

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

**Note:** *When a trailer is connected to the vehicle, the Rear Sensing System may detect the trailer and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that the driver disables the Rear Sensing System when a trailer is connected to the vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

The system may provide display or sound warnings when the detected obstacle is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the bumper.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). If your vehicle is equipped with a front sensing system, you can switch the system off using the parking aid button. See **General Information** (page 88).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

See **Information Messages** (page 91).

## REAR PARKING AID

The rear parking aid sensors automatically turn on when you shift into reverse (R).

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 11.81 in (30 cm) the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects an object farther than 11.81 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. If the system detects an approaching object the warning sounds again.



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R):

- Moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 10 in

(30 cm) away from the bumper. Additionally, the system provides obstacle distance indication through the center stack display (if equipped). The visual indications are present when the transmission is in reverse (R).

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases (obstacle becomes closer), the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks show greyed out.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA

 **WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 **WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 **WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E253876

- Vehicles without spare wheel: camera is located on swing gate applique.
- Vehicles with spare wheel: camera is mounted to the spare wheel bracket.

### Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features are displayed.

**Note:** If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what is being towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.

**Note:** The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- The camera's view is obstructed by mud, water or debris. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

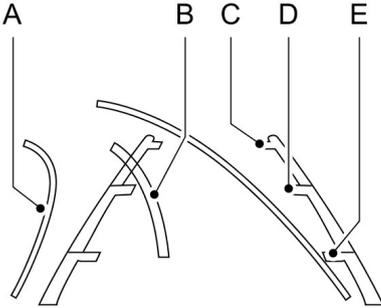
Access the rear view camera system settings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

After changing a system setting, the display screen shows a preview of the selected features.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** *Dynamic guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E247578

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position is changed while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines are not shown when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the exterior mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## Manual Zoom



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.*

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission is shifted out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Selectable settings for this feature are + and -. The default setting for the manual zoom is OFF.

## Rear Camera Delay (If Equipped)

When you shift the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear while the rear camera delay is active, the camera image displays until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

---

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

### Enhanced Park Aids

**Note:** *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

When the sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green highlights at the top of the image. The alert highlights all objects detected.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

# Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed 20 mph or 30 km/h.

**Note:** *The system cancels if your vehicle speed drops below 10 mph / 16km/h under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## Changing the Set Speed

Press and release SET + or SET -. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in 1km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in 1 mph increments.

## USING CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

To help the system to maintain the set speed when going downhill, downshift to a lower gear.

**Note:** *The system cancels if your vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release the cruise control button.



The indicator appears in the information display.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
4. The indicator changes color in the information display.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

**Note:** *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

## Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

## Cruise Control (If Equipped)

---

### Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release the OFF button, when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

# Driving Aids

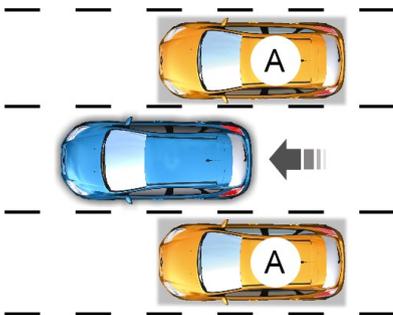
## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



E124788

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper.

**Note:** *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

## Using the Blind Spot Information System

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

## System Lights and Messages



E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

# Driving Aids

**Note:** The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

## Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 91). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 91).

## Switching the System Off and On

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 88). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

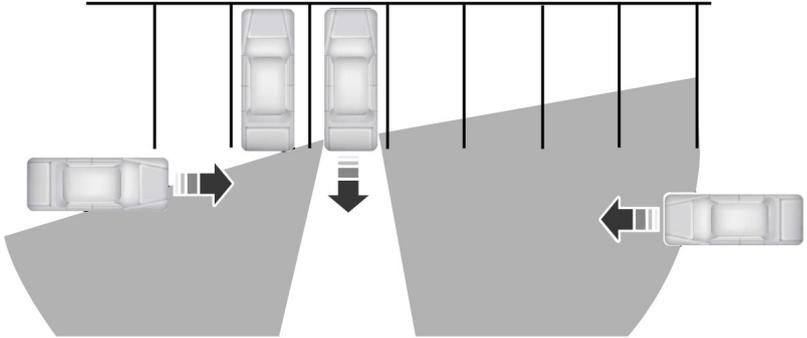
## Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

# Driving Aids

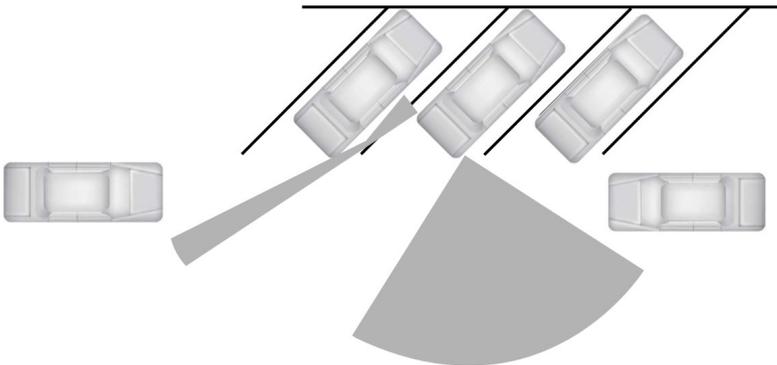
The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The

system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



E142440

The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



E142441

# Driving Aids

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

## System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.*

## Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 91).

## System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 91).

## Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 91). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 91).

**Note:** *The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

# Driving Aids

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## STEERING

### Electric Power Steering



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

The electric power steering system operates by an electric motor, which reduces the effort on the driver's steering wheel.

The system operates progressively and during maneuvers, the system leaves the effort lighter. As the vehicle speed increases, it reduces its action to improve the control of the vehicle.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will not lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

### Steering Tips

Avoid sudden movements with the steering wheel. The force required to change the vehicle direction is lower, compared to a vehicle with mechanical steering.

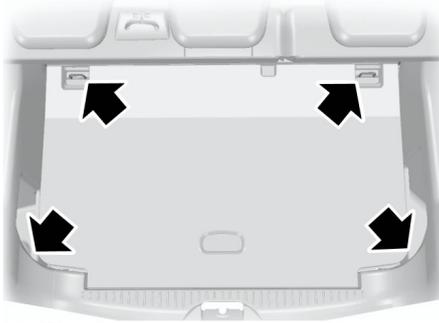
If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire
- Uneven tire wear
- Loose or worn suspension components
- Loose or worn steering components
- Improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

# Load Carrying

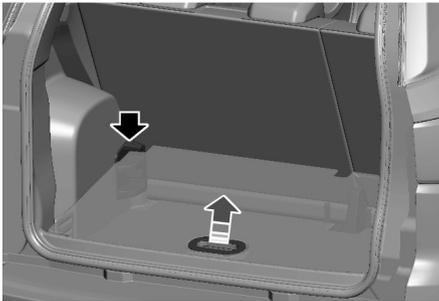
## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E142324

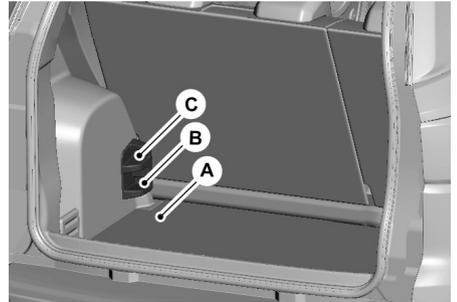
## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

### Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)



E252241

The adjustable load floor can be set to three different positions. When the Adjustable Load Floor is in the highest position and the rear seat backrests are folded forward, the Adjustable Load Floor and the folded seats form a continuous flat surface.



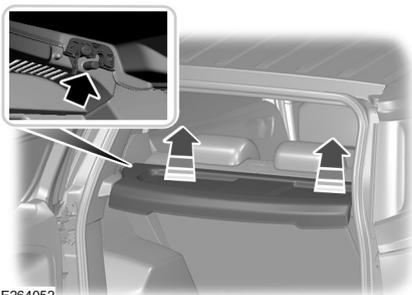
E252488

- A Lowest position.
- B Middle position.
- C Highest position.

## LUGGAGE COVERS

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

# Load Carrying



E264052

1. Pull the luggage cover upward to release it from the retaining points on both sides.
2. Rotate the luggage cover 90° to remove.

Install in reverse order. When you hear a click sound, the luggage cover is locked on the retaining points.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

### Maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the crossbars:

Engine	Tires	Weight
1.0 L EcoBoost	16"	15 lbs (6.8 Kg)
1.0 L EcoBoost	17"	44 lbs (20 Kg)
2.0 L 4WD	-	55 lbs (25 Kg)

**Note:** Loads should never be placed directly on the roof panel.

The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

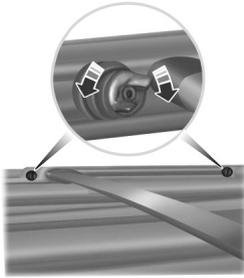
For proper function of the roof rack system, loads must be placed directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. Your vehicle may be equipped with factory-installed crossbars. Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars, designed specifically for your vehicle, are also recommended for use with your roof rack system.

Make sure that the load is securely fastened. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

### Adjusting the Crossbar (If Equipped)

**Note:** Wind noise can be minimized by either removing or repositioning the crossbar when not in use. Position the front crossbar in the intermediate position to minimize wind noise. The crossbar can be adjusted or removed using the steps below.

# Load Carrying



E142448

1. Remove the crossbar thumbwheels at both sides of the crossbar by turning them counterclockwise.
2. Remove the crossbar by rotating it clockwise and sliding the ends off of the shoulder bolts in the side rails.
3. Move the front crossbar to the new side rail position and slide the crossbar onto the shoulder bolt at that position.
4. Replace and tighten the thumbwheels at both sides of the crossbar by turning them clockwise until tight.

Make sure to check that the thumbwheels are tight each time load is added or removed from the roof rack, and periodically while traveling. Make sure that the load is secure before traveling.

## LOAD LIMIT

### Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance.

Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

### Tire and Loading Label Information

#### Example:



#### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL: 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3  
 NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL: 5 AVANT: 2 ARRIERE: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **385 kg or 850 lbs.**  
 Le poids total des occupants et de chargement ne doit jamais dépasser **385 kg ou 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
SPARE	NONE	NONE

SEE OWNER'S  
 MANUAL FOR  
 ADDITIONAL  
 INFORMATION



#### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL: 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3  
 NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL: 5 AVANT: 2 ARRIERE: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **396 kg or 875 lbs.**  
 Le poids total des occupants et de chargement ne doit jamais dépasser **396 kg ou 875 lbs.**

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI

SEE OWNER'S  
 MANUAL FOR  
 ADDITIONAL  
 INFORMATION  
 VOIR LE MANUEL  
 DE L'USAGER  
 POUR PLUS DE  
 RENSEIGNEMENTS

E198719

## Payload

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the

## Load Carrying

edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb” for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

### **GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)**

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

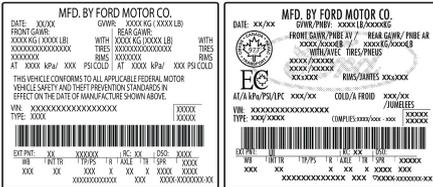
### **GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)**

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

# Load Carrying

## Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



E 190528

**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

## GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing

vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* available at an authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

# Load Carrying



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

## ***Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity***

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

## Load Carrying

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

### Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

 **WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

**Note:** See *Towing a Trailer* (page 174).

Your vehicle may have electrical items, such as fuses or relays, related to towing. See **Fuses** (page 196).

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

## Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop and load capacity. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in another chapter of this manual. See **Load Limit** (page 169).

You can also find information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide** available at your authorized dealer, or online.

### RV & Trailer Towing Guide Online

Website	<a href="http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/">http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/</a>
---------	---

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.

# Towing

This feature applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, the traction control warning lamp flashes and a message will appear in the information display. Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 167).

## RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

**Note:** Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

**Note:** For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) starting at the 1000 foot (300 meter) elevation point.

**Note:** Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Powertrain	Maximum GCWR	Maximum trailer weight <sup>1</sup>	Maximum tongue weight <sup>1</sup>
1.0 L Ecoboost	4,960 lb (2,250 kg)	1,400 lb (635 kg)	143 lb (65 kg)
2.0 L 4WD	5,754 lb (2,610 kg)	2,000 lb (907 kg)	198 lb (90 kg)

<sup>1</sup>Calculated with SAE J2807 method.

# Towing

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 169).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

### Trailer Towing Connector (If Equipped)



E168683

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

**Note:** *Install the water proof protection cap back onto the trailer towing connector whenever it is not in use. This helps to prevent water damage and trailer towing connector malfunction.*

**Note:** *You cannot use a seven-pin trailer wiring connector for your vehicle and the trailer lighting equipment.*

Color	Function
Yellow	Left direction indicator and stop lamp
White	Ground (-)
Green	Right direction indicator and stop lamp
Brown	Running lights

## Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

## Safety Chains

**Note:** *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

# Towing

## Trailer Brakes



**WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

**The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.**

**Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.**

## Trailer Lamps



**WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

## Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

## When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
  1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.

# Towing

2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
3. Place the automatic transmission in park (P).
4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. Chocks are not included with your vehicle.

## Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

**Note:** Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.

**Note:** Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** removing the trailer from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

## TOWING POINTS

### Front Towing Point



E241979

1. Push the cover.
2. Release the cover.

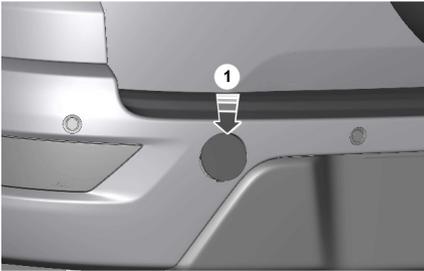


E241980

3. Install the recovery hook.

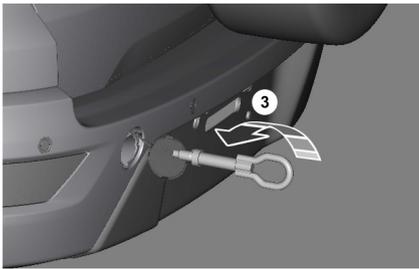
# Towing

## Rear Towing Point (If Equipped)



E241981

1. Push the cover.
2. Release the cover.



E241982

3. Install the recovery hook.

The recovery hook may be in the following locations:

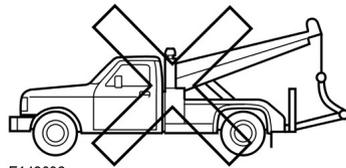
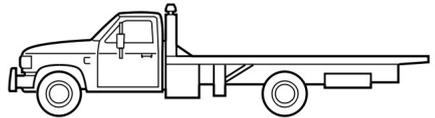
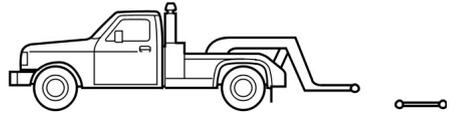
- Inside temporary mobility kit.
- Inside Jack and tools storage tray.

You must carry the recovery hook in your vehicle at all times.

**Note:** *The recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it and make sure that it is fully tightened. Failure to do so could result in the recovery hook becoming loose.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.*

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend towing your vehicle with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

It is acceptable to tow a front-wheel drive vehicle from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

# Towing

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a two-wheel tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing a four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

If your vehicle becomes inoperable (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in position **N**. If you cannot move the transmission into **N**, you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 142).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

### Recreational Towing

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 101).

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. We designed these guidelines to prevent damage to your transmission.

Front-wheel drive vehicles **CANNOT** be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground) as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. You must place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

Four-wheel drive vehicles **CANNOT** be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground), as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

**Note:** *New tires need to be run-in for approximately 310.7 mi (500 km). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.*

### Brakes and Clutch

**Note:** *If possible, avoid heavy braking and clutching during the first 93.2 mi (150 km) in the city, and the first 932.1 mi (1,500 km) in highways.*

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home).
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.
- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER



**WARNING:** Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

## Driving Hints

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E266447

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (20 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.

- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).
- Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

# Roadside Emergencies

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle. Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

If you require more information, please refer to the coverage section of your warranty guide, call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

If you require more information, please refer to the coverage section of your warranty guide, call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

## HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard flashers switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

### Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

**Note:** All direction indicators flash.

**Note:** Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns you of a failed direction indicator bulb.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake the hazard flashers could turn on.

## Hazard Flashers Warning Lamp



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

## FUEL SHUTOFF



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

# Roadside Emergencies

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

**Note:** *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

**Note:** *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

# Roadside Emergencies

1. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
2. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
3. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

## Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.

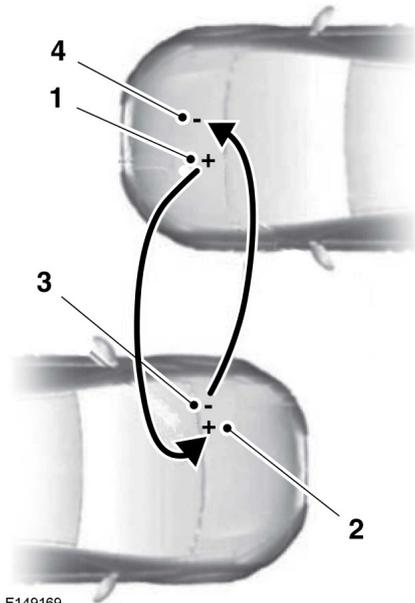


**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



E149169

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor or fuel injection system.

# Roadside Emergencies



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

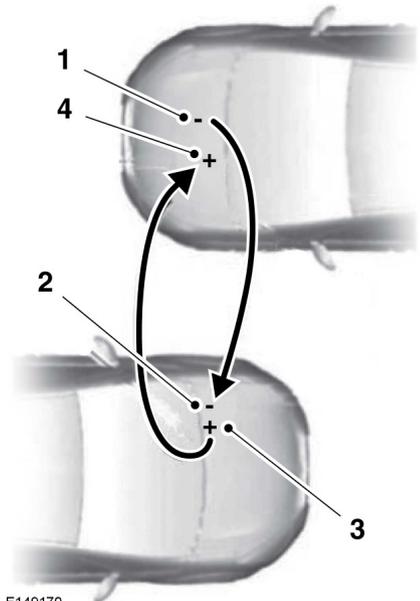
## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



E149170

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

## **POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM**

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- The hazard control button is pressed
- The panic button (if equipped) is pressed on the remote entry transmitter
- Your vehicle runs out of power

# Customer Assistance

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
<a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a>

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

#### Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

#### Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Website
<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>

#### Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)  
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

#### Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

# Customer Assistance

---

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

## IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

# Customer Assistance

---

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

## **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600  
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

# Customer Assistance

---

## UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

## GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

**FORD MOTOR COMPANY**  
**Customer Relationship Centers in:**

## Customer Assistance

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Asia Pacific	N/A	N/A	apemcrc@ford.com
Caribbean and Central America	+1 313 594 4857	-	expcac@ford.com
Middle East	Ford 80004443673	971 4 3327 266	menacac@ford.com
	Lincoln 80004441066		
	UAE 80004441066		
	Saudi Arabia 8008443673		
	Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078		
North Africa	N/A	N/A	nafcrc@ford.com
Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	prcac@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa	+1-313-594-4857	N/A	ssacrc@ford.com
South Korea	+82-02-1600-6003	N/A	infokr1@ford.com or infokr@lincoln.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, [expcso@ford.com](mailto:expcso@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

## Customer Assistance

---

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
47911 Halyard Drive  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com)

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

### Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

# Customer Assistance

---

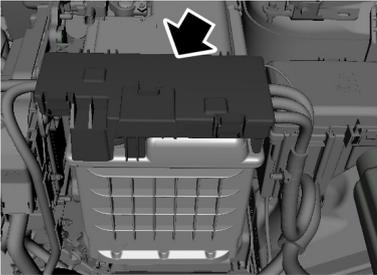
<b>Transport Canada Contact Information</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/reporting-defects-motor-vehicles.html">http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/reporting-defects-motor-vehicles.html</a> (English)
Website	<a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/secureautomobile/signaler-defauts-vehicules-automobiles.html">http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/secureautomobile/signaler-defauts-vehicules-automobiles.html</a> (French)
Phone	1-800-333-0510

<b>Ford of Canada Contact Information</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

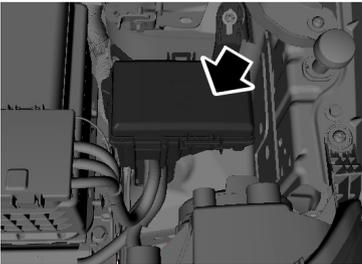
### Battery Fuse Box



E246704

This fuse box is attached to the battery positive terminal.

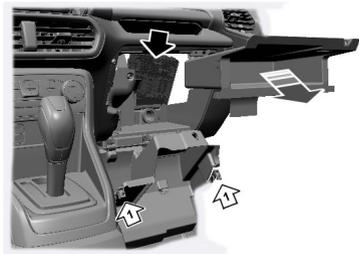
### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E246703

This fuse box is located in the engine compartment.

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E263694

This fuse box is located behind the glove box. To access the fuse box, do the following:

1. Open the glove box and release the clips.
2. Remove the storage compartment.

**Note:** Any improper modification to the electrical system can compromise the safety of the vehicle, implying risk of fire or engine damage. For any clarifications or questions, contact a Ford Distributor.

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

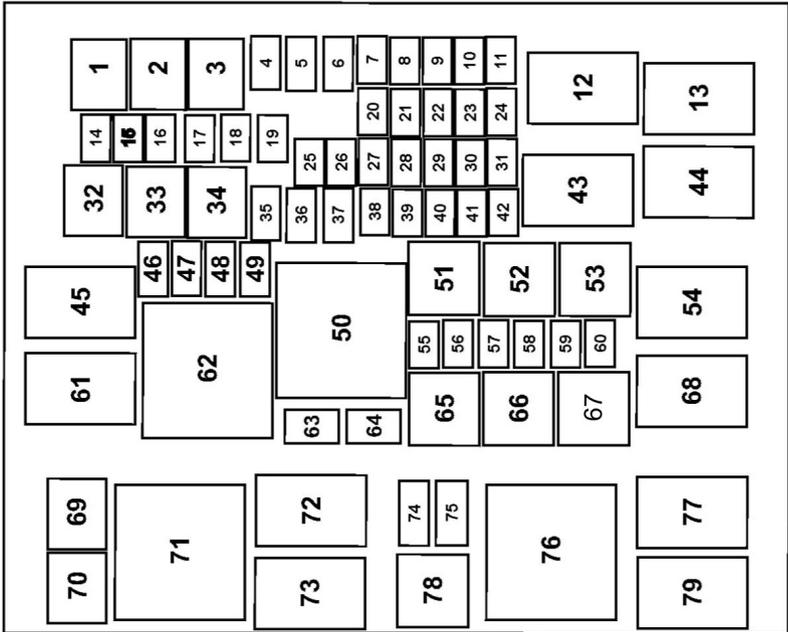


**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

Your vehicle may not be equipped with all of the features listed in the fusing tables. This information describes all fusing for all available vehicle models.

# Fuses

## Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E245746

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	60A	Engine cooling fan relay 2.
2	50A	Engine cooling fan relay 1.
3	40A	DC / AC inverter.
4	40A	ABS with Eletronic Stability Program (valves).
5	30A	Driver power seat.
6	40A	Front blower motor.
7	10A	Brake on/off Switch.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Fuse amp rating</b>	<b>Protected components</b>
8	20A	Moonroof.
9	15A	Rear washer. Wiper.
10	7.5A	A/C clutch relay.
11	5A	Power point coil. Horn. Fuel pump.
14	10A	Heated exterior mirrors.
15	5A	Rain sensor. Rear washer.
16	10A	Rear window wiper motor.
17	20A	Power point 1 (or cigar lighter).
18	20A	Power point 2.
19	-	Not used.
20	20A	Powertrain control module.
21	15A	Oxygen sensor heater. Catalyst monitor sensor. Canister purge valve. Variable camshaft timing solenoid valves. Vapor blocking valve.
22	10A	A/C clutch control. Fan control - on/off. Puller fan coil (1.0 L). Coolant pump control. Run / on water pump. Exhaust gas recirculation bypass solenoid. Variable oil pump control. Variable A/C compressor valve. All-wheel drive relay module (2.0 L). Active grille shutter.
23	15A 20A	For ignition coils (2.0 L). For ignition coils (1.0 L).
24	-	Not used.
25	15A	Subwoofer amplifier.

## Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
26	20A	Provision for trailer tow wiring.
27	-	Not used.
28	10A	Left horn.
29	10A	Right horn.
30	15A	Heated Steering wheel.
31	5A	Temperature mass air flow sensor (2.0L).
32	30A	Body control module (battery voltage).
33	60A	ABS/electronic stability program pump.
34	50A	Trailer tow module.
35	40A	Heated backlite.
36	30A	Starter.
37	40A	Positive temperature coefficient heater.
38	-	Not used.
39	-	Not used.
40	25A	Heated seats (climate control module).
41	15A	Subwoofer amplifier.
42	7.5A	Intercooler puller fan (1.0 L).
46	30A	Power window switch power switch times.
47	20A	Fuel pump.
48	-	Not used.
49	20A	Assisted direct start transmission fluid pump (stop/start) - power.
55	-	Not used.
56	5A	Electrical power assisted system module. Powertrain control module.
57	10A	Start / Stop - transmission fluid pump.
58	10A	Left hand blind spot monitor module. Right hand blind spot monitor module.

# Fuses

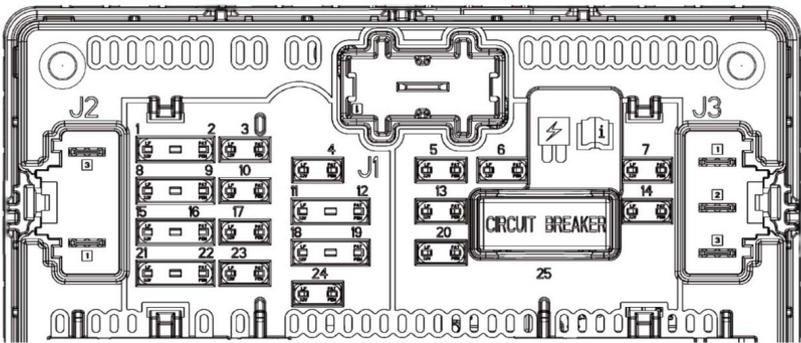
Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Rear video camera
59	5A	ABS module.
60	5A	Heated backlite. Heated windshield left (to heated wiper park).
63	25A	Front wiper.
64	30A	Body control module - run/start bus.
69	-	Not used.
70	-	Not used.
74	10A	Heated wiper park.
75	-	Not used.

Relay	Circuits switched
12	Powertrain control module.
13	Starter.
43	Auxiliary power point.
44	Windshield wiper.
45	Front blower motor.
50	Run/start.
51	Not used.
52	Vehicle horn.
53	Not used.
54	Rear washer.
61	Heated backlite / heated mirror.
62	Engine cooling fan 2.
65	Fuel pump.
66	Not used.
67	A/C clutch.

# Fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
68	Engine cooling fan 1.
71	Not used.
72	Not used.
73	Heated wiper park.
76	Positive temperature coefficient heater.
77	Puller fan (1.0 L Fox).
78	Not used.
79	Positive temperature coefficient heater.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E245748

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F01	5A	Not used.
F02	5A	Humidity and incar temperature sensor.
F03	10A	Reverse parking aid module.
F04	10A	Ignition switch. Key in switch & solenoid.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Fuse amp rating</b>	<b>Protected components</b>
		Start-Stop switch.
F05	20A	Central lock relay. Central unlock relay internal.
F06	10A	Power windows switches. Power sunroof switch & module inverter.
F07	30A	Not used.
F08	5A	Not used.
F09	5A	Electrochromic inside mirror. Overdrive off switch. Passenger Airbag detection ON / OFF.
F10	10A	Smart data link connector.
F11	5A	Telematic control unit (embedded modem).
F12	-	Not used.
F13	15A	Driver unlock relay.
F14	30A	Not used.
F15	15A	Extended power module relay starter.
F16	15A	Not used.
F17	15A	SYNC. Mini electronic finish panel.
F18	7.5A	Not used.
F19	7.5A	Not used.
F20	10A	Security Horn.
F21	7.5A	Climate Control Head.
F22	7.5A	Steering column control module. Smart data link logic. Instrument cluster.
F23	20A	Audio control module.
F24	20A	Extended power mode module.
F25	30A	Not used.

# Fuses

## Battery Fuse Box

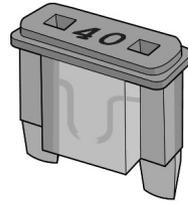
Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	250A	Engine compartment fuse box.
2	60A	Electric power assist steering.
3	100A	Body control module.
4	70A	Heating control unit.
5	275A	Starter.

## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

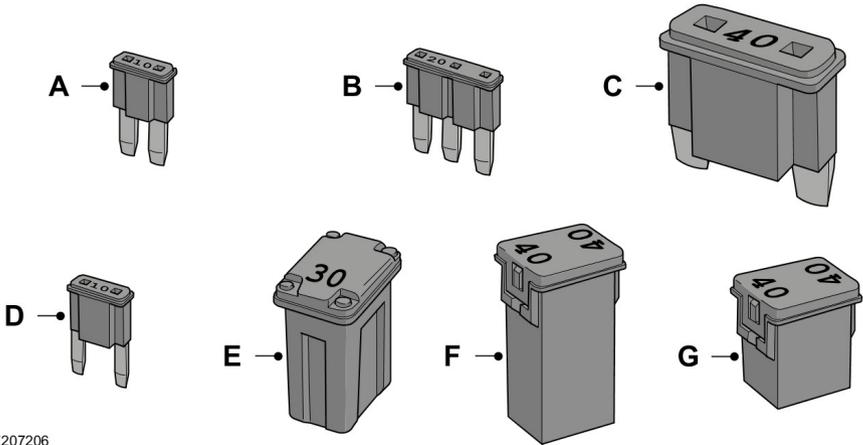


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

# Fuses

## Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

## Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

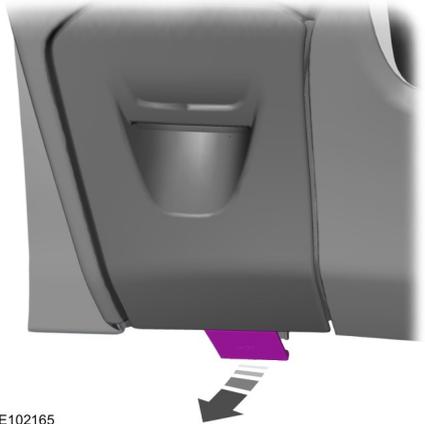
## Working with the Engine On

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



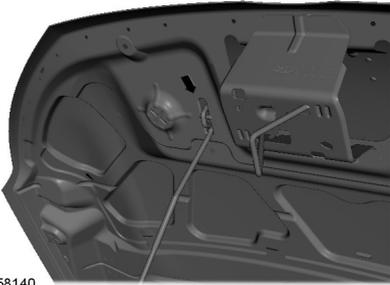
E102165



E154746

# Maintenance

Move the catch to the right.



E158140

Open the hood and support it with the hood prop rod. Attach the prop rod to the hood, the correct location is indicated by an arrow.

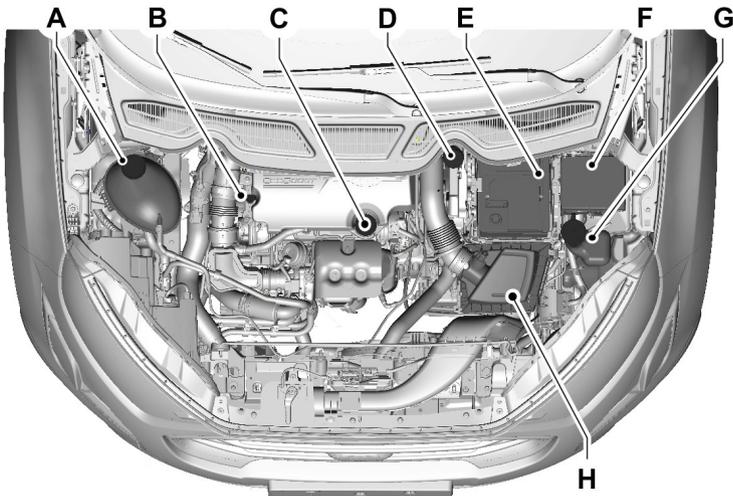
## Closing the Hood

**Note:** You must secure the hood prop correctly after use.

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is closed properly.

Lower the hood and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20-30 centimeters.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E246490

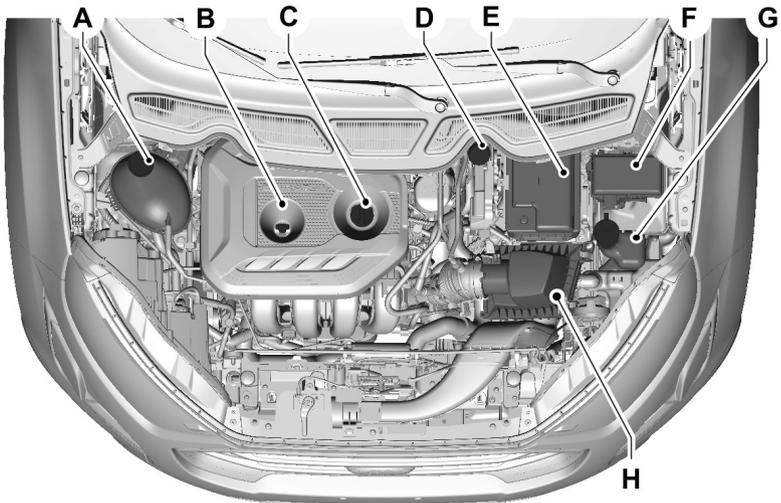
- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 208).

- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 208).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 214).

# Maintenance

- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 215).
- F Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 196).
- G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 215).
- H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 230).

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L

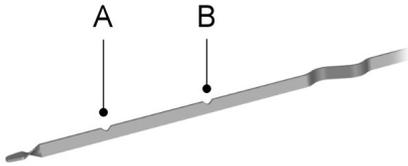


E246492

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 208).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 208).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 214).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 215).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 196).
- G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 215).
- H Air cleaner. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 230).

# Maintenance

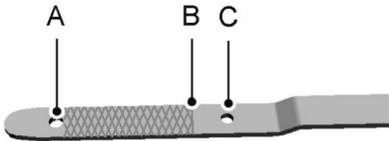
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L



E225040

- A Minimum.
- B Fill Level.
- C Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not work on a hot engine.

To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, do the following:

1. Make sure the parking brake is on. Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
3. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
4. Switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan. Checking the engine oil level too soon after you switch the engine off may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 205).
6. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 207).
7. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 208).
8. Make sure that the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 278).
9. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** Do not remove the dipstick when the engine is running.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

# Maintenance

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

## Adding Engine Oil

 **WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 207). Turn it counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 278). See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 278). You may have to use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
4. Recheck the oil level.
5. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
6. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Make sure you install the oil filler cap correctly.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET (IF EQUIPPED)

Only reset the system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

### Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
2. Fully press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time.
3. Keep the accelerator and brake pedals fully pressed.
4. After three seconds, a message appears confirming that the reset is in progress.

# Maintenance

5. After 25 seconds, a message appears confirming that the reset is complete.
6. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
7. Switch the ignition off.

## ENGINE COOLING FAN

 **WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

 **WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you.

 **WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

 **WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 385).

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## Adding Coolant

 **WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use coolant or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

# Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 278). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 278). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

**Note:** *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 270).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

**Note:** *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

**Note:** *In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Water alone, without coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing. When you reach a service location, you must have the cooling system drained and refilled with prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 278).*

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

# Maintenance

## Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 270).

## Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.



If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

# Maintenance

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power. In order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

# Maintenance

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (**P**).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 385). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

# Maintenance



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 270).

## WASHER FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 270).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

# Maintenance



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 206).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

# Maintenance

4. Disconnect the negative (-) battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive (+) battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

**Note:** If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.

**Note:** Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

**Note:** If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

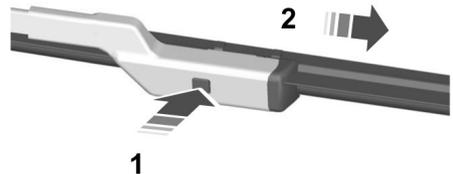
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

### Windshield Wiper Blades

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.



E72899

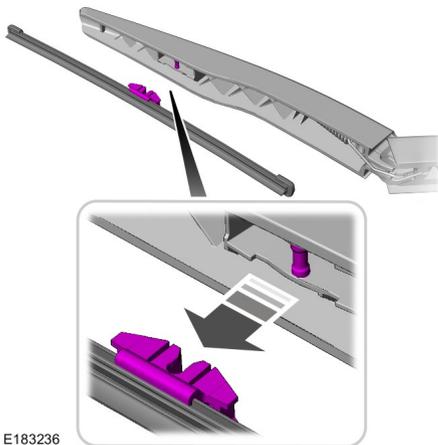
1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

### Rear Window Wiper Blade

1. Lift the wiper arms to the maximum extent and hold it.

# Maintenance



E183236

2. Pull the wiper blade away from the wiper arm.
3. Install the new wiper by aligning with the wiper arm groove and clip them together.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

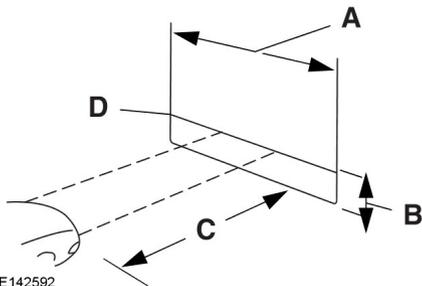
**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



E142592

- A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

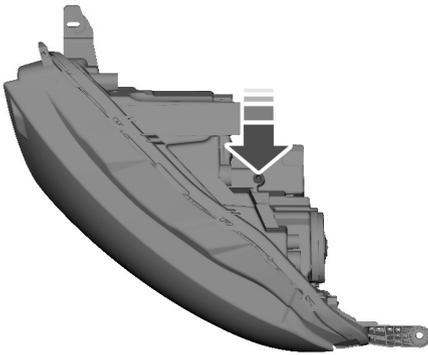
### Vehicles With Halogen Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.
4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

# Maintenance



E257560

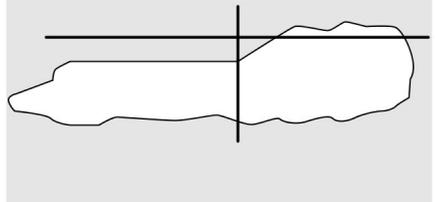
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Vehicles With High Intensity Discharge Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

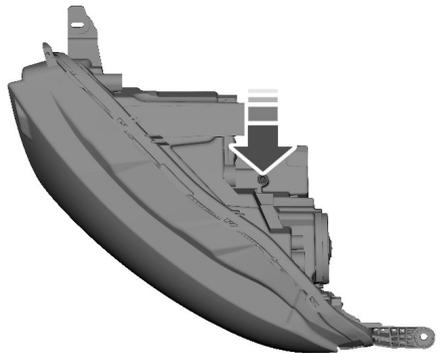
**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142466

4. There is a distinct cut-off (change from light to dark) in the left portion of the beam pattern. The top edge of this cut-off should be positioned two inches (5 centimeters) below the horizontal reference line.



E257560

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp.

# Maintenance

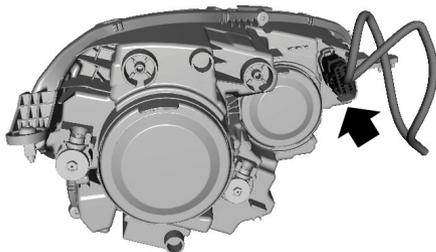
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 205).



E246899

Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you reconnect the electrical connector correctly.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the lower fixing point.

## CHANGING A BULB

**Note:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.



**WARNING:** Bulbs can become hot. Let the bulb cool down before removing it. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

**Note:** Switch the lights and the ignition off.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

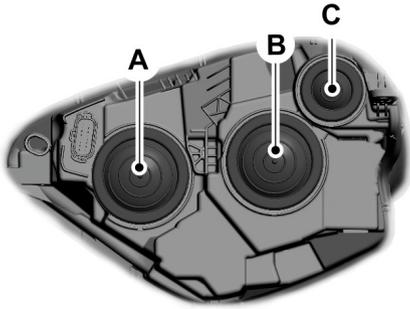
**Note:** Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

### Headlamp

**Note:** Disconnect the bulb electrical connectors and remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

# Maintenance

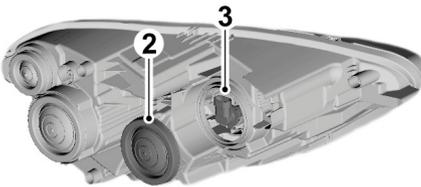


E253516

- A Headlamp low beam
- B Main beam.
- C Side Marker.

## Headlamp Main Beam

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.



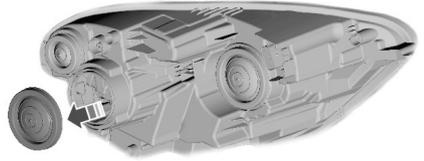
E253722

1. Open the hood.
2. Carefully remove the cover.

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Headlamp Low Beam

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.



E253723

1. Open the hood.
2. Carefully remove the cover.

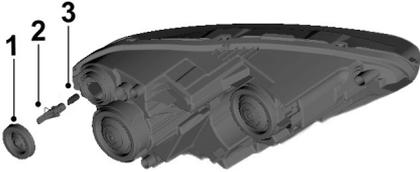


E253724

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

# Maintenance

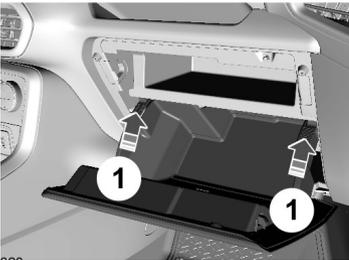
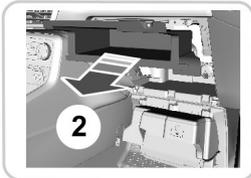
## Side Marker



E253774

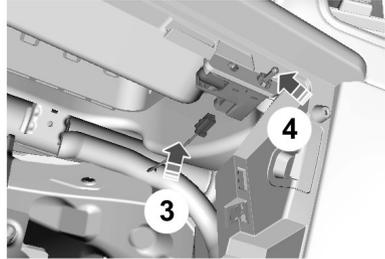
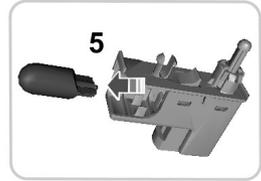
1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Glove box lamp (If Equipped)



E247620

1. Press the compartment.
2. Remove the box.



E247786

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Press the button.
5. Remove the bulb.

## Front Fog Lamps

**Note:** Do not separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

# Maintenance



E247556

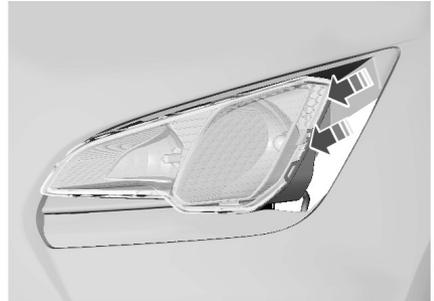
Remove the fog bezel, as indicated.

**Note:** Use a soft tool to avoid any damage to the vehicle.



E247557

Loose and remove attachment screw.



E253456

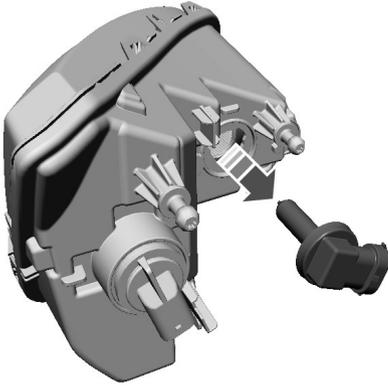
Put your fingers at the back of the fog as indicated and pull off the fog lamp.



E253457

Unplug bulb connector.

# Maintenance



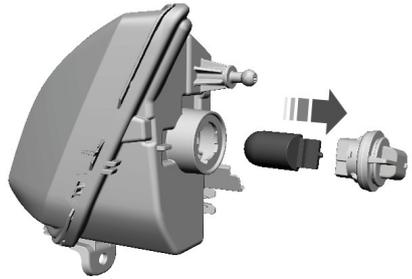
E247558

Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

## Direction indicators

**Note:** Do not separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

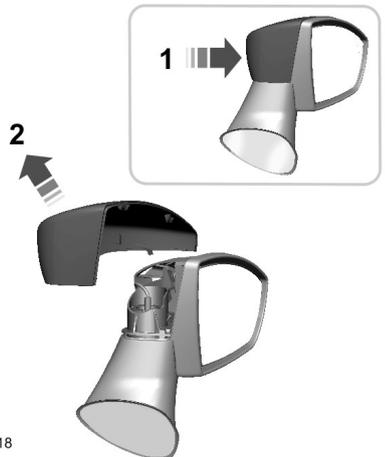
Use the same process to remove the fog and turn indicator Lamp.



E247616

Remove the turn indicator bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

## Side Repeater



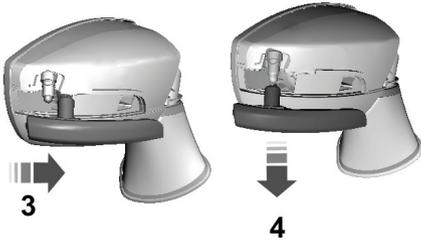
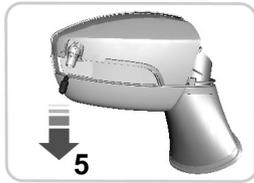
E247618

1. Press the side of the cover to release the clips.
2. Remove the cover.

# Maintenance

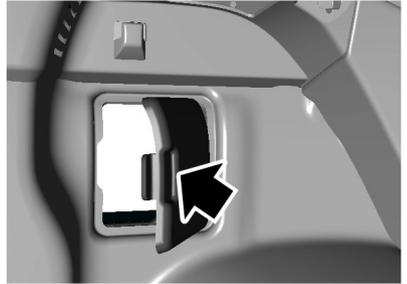
## Rear lamps

### Direction Indicator, Tail and Brake Lamp



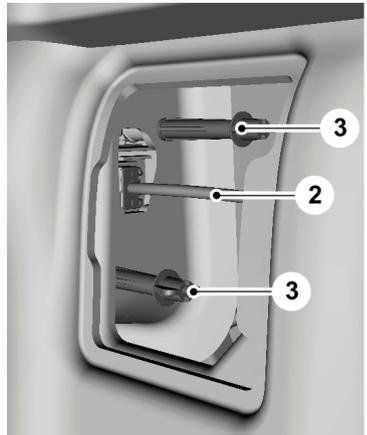
E247619

3. Move the cover that covers the lamp.
4. Remove the cap that covers the lamp.
5. Remove the bulb and bulb holder. Remove the bulb.



E246932

1. Open the trim panel.

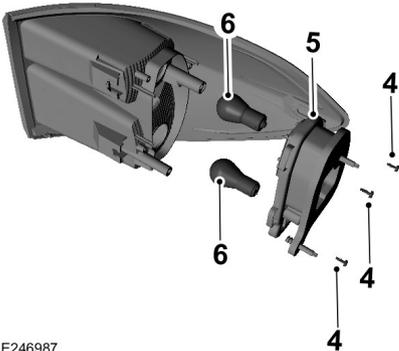


E246986

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nut.

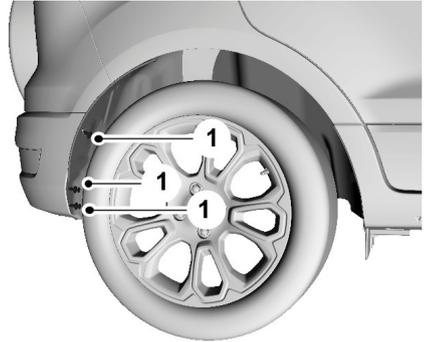
# Maintenance

## Reversing Lamp



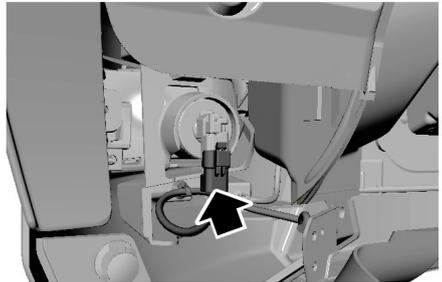
E246987

4. Remove the screws.
5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Remove the lamp.
7. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.



E247594

1. Remove wheel arch cover.



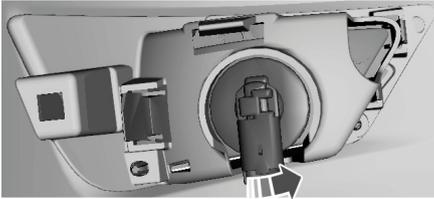
E246934

- Disconnect the electrical connector.

# Maintenance

## Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

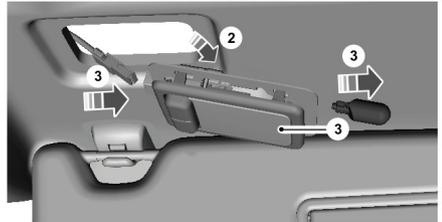
**Note:** On some vehicles the lamps are LED. They are not serviceable items, please consult a Ford Dealer if they fail.



E246935

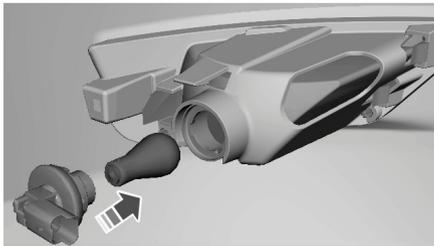
Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove the bulb holder from the housing.

## Vanity lamp (If Equipped)



E247617

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb anti-clockwise and remove it.



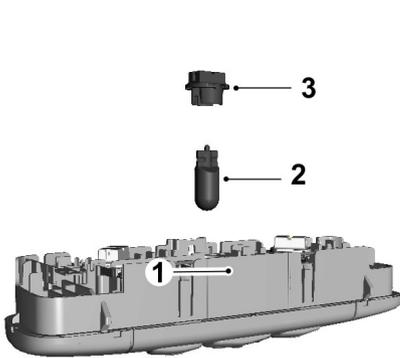
E246985

Remove the bulb from the holder.

Gently press the new bulb into the bulb holder, install new bulb and holder into the housing, turning it clockwise.

# Maintenance

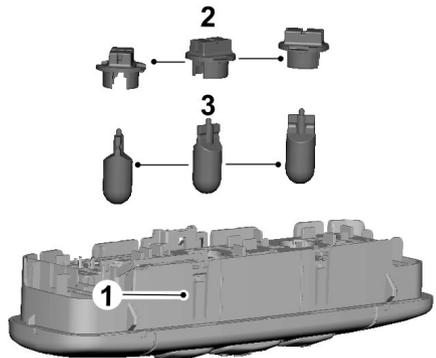
## Interior Lamp



E246930

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Reading Lamps



E246931

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Map Lamp (driver side) (If Equipped)

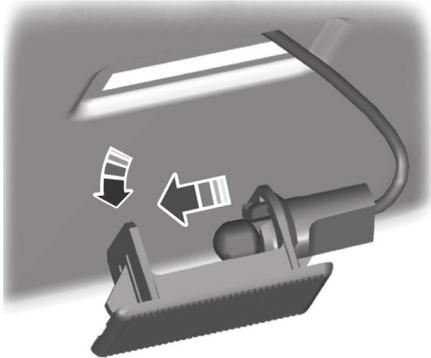
1. Position the visor down.
2. Carefully remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb.

# Maintenance

## Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Tailgate Lamp

(If Equipped)

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Carefully remove
3. Remove the bulb.



E72784

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front direction indicator.	W28/8W	28/8
Front fog lamps.	H8W	35
Side repeater.	WY5W	5
Side marker reflector.	W5W	5
Rear direction indicator.	WY21W	21
Brake and tail lamp.	W21/5W	21/5
Reversing lamps.	P21W	21
Number plate lamp.	W5W	5
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5
Vanity lamp.	W5W	5
Daytime running lamps.	LED	-

# Maintenance

## Low Series

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam.	HB3	60
Headlamp low beam.	H11	55

## Mid Series

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam.	HB3	60
Headlamp low beam.	H11	55

**Note:** *On some vehicles the lamps are LED. These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.*

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

**Note:** *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage.*

### Changing the Air Filter Element

1. Remove the two clips that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.

5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
6. Fix the air filter housing cover and install the clips.

## DRIVE BELT ROUTING - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

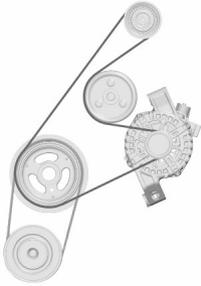


E163197

# Maintenance

---

## DRIVE BELT ROUTING - 2.0L



E189146

# Vehicle Care

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (U.S.) Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover / Dissolvant de goudron et éliminateur d'insectes Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (U.S.) Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner / Nettoyant pour métal brillant Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash (U.S.) Motorcraft® Detail Wash / Shampooing superfin Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S.) (Canada) ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
(U.S.) Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo / Shampooing pour moteur Motorcraft® (Canada) CXC-66-A (Canada)	-
(U.S.) Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner / Nettoyant multi-usage Motorcraft® (Canada) CXC-101 (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glacé de haute qualité Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-32-B2 (U.S.) CXC-37-A/B/D/F (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

# Vehicle Care

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (U.S.) Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner / Nettoyant professionnel pour sellerie et moquette Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S.) (Canada) ZC-14 (U.S.)	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner / Nettoie-vitres de qualité supérieure Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-23 (U.S.) CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (U.S.) Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner / Nettoyant pour roues et pneus Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	-

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.

- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

**Note:** *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

## Cleaning the Headlamps

**Note:** *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

# Vehicle Care

---

**Note:** Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

## Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

**Note:** Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

## Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

**Note:** Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

## Underbody

Regularly clean the underside of your vehicle using water. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

## Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.

# Vehicle Care

---

- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

## CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

### Mirrors

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

## CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 237).

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

# Vehicle Care

---

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

**Note:** Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

## CLEANING THE WHEELS

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

# Vehicle Care

---

**Note:** *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

**Note:** *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

## VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

## General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

## Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

## Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

# Vehicle Care

---

- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

## Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

## Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

## Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

## Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

## Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

## Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

## Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

# Vehicle Care

---

## **BODY STYLING KITS**

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes, using other sizes could damage your vehicle. If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealer to have the system reprogrammed. If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted by the manufacturer, you can check the suitability with an authorized dealer.

Additional information related to the functionality and maintenance of your tires can be found later in this chapter. See **General Information** (page 241).

The Ford recommended tire inflation pressures can be found on the Tire Label, which is located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. This information can also be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door latch post; next to the driver's seating position.

Ford strongly recommends maintaining these tire pressures at all times. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns, reduced fuel economy, and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Note:** Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

**Note:** Check your tire pressures at least once per month.

Set the pressure for your spare tire to the highest value given for your vehicle and tire size combination, if equipped.

## Notice to utility vehicle and truck owners

 **WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

 **WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

 **WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.



E145298

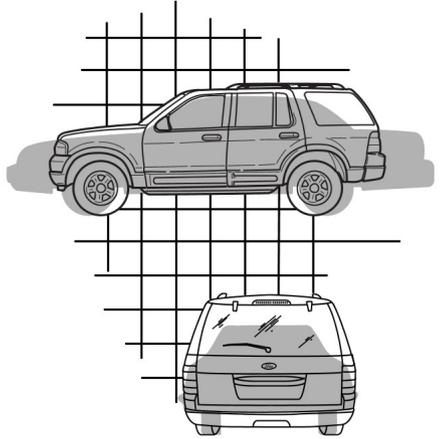
# Wheels and Tires

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Study your owner's manual and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

## How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

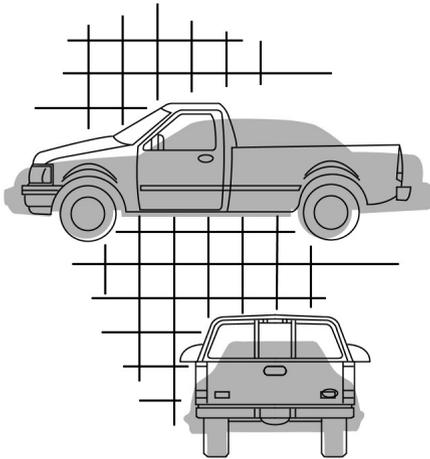
Sport utility vehicles and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



E145299

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

# Wheels and Tires



E168583

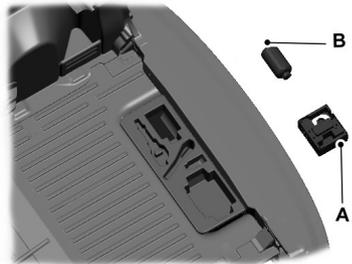
As a result of the above dimensional differences, Sport utility vehicles and trucks often have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition. These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare wheel and tire. In these cases it will be supplied with a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tire. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

**Note:** The kit may be used as an air compressor for tire inflation maintenance when the sealant bottle is not assembled to the compressor.

The kit is located under the floor in the luggage compartment.



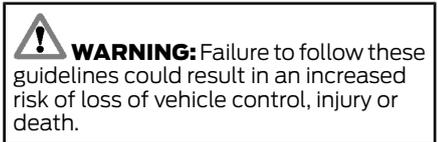
E261900

- A Compressor
- B Sealant bottle

The kit consists of an air compressor to inflate the tire and a sealing compound in a canister that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit will provide a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 mi (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to reach a tire service location.

**Note:** Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

## General Information



# Wheels and Tires

---

Punctures larger than 0.24 in (6 mm) may not be sealable. Tire sidewall damage cannot be temporarily repaired.

**Note:** Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures located within the tire tread with the kit.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).

**Note:** Do not drive further than 124 mi (200 km). Drive only to the closest authorized Ford dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.

## Tips for use of the kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle doesn't move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area, leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.

- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended when it is operating.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -22.0°F (-30°C) and 157.9°F (70°C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date which is printed on the top of sealant bottle.
- After sealant use, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD, and DVD player operation.

## What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be sealed in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, the tire will be reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, you will need to drive the vehicle approximately 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, you will need to check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

# Wheels and Tires

## First stage: reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

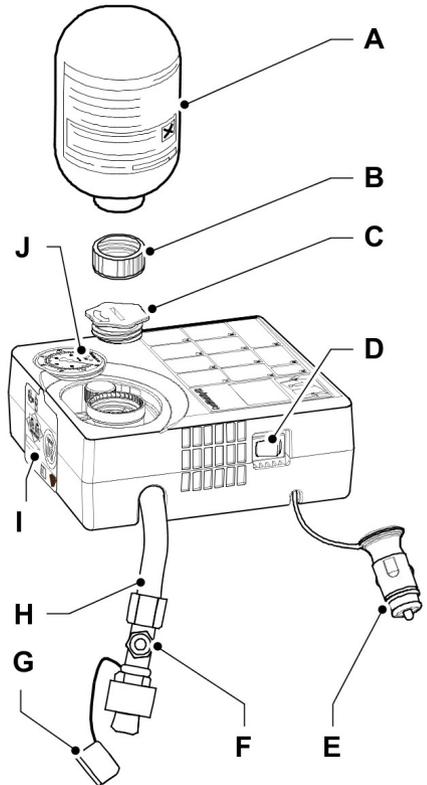


**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic. Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and turn the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.



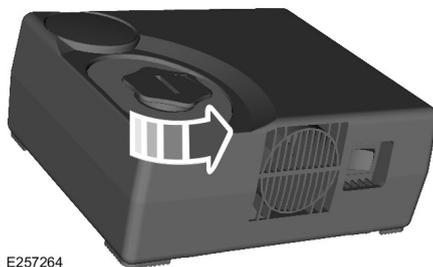
E261905

- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Orange cap.
- D On/Off switch.
- E Power plug with cable.
- F Pressure release valve.
- G Protective cap.
- H Air/Sealant Hose.

# Wheels and Tires

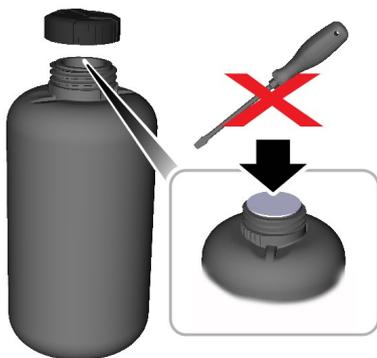
- I Speed Restriction Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

1. Remove the warning label (I) showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the side of the compressor and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
2. Pull out the hose (H) and the power plug with cable (E) from beneath the kit.
3. Unscrew the sealant bottle cap (B). Do not remove or puncture the seal on the bottle.



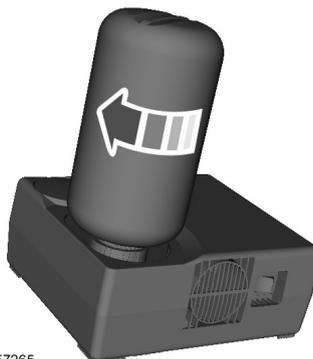
E257264

5. Screw the sealant bottle (A) clockwise into the bottle holder unit fully tight.



E256963

4. Unscrew the orange cap (C).



E257265

**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as the sealant could escape.

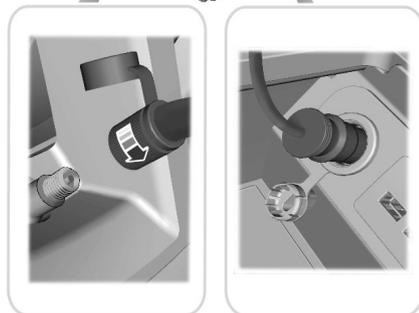
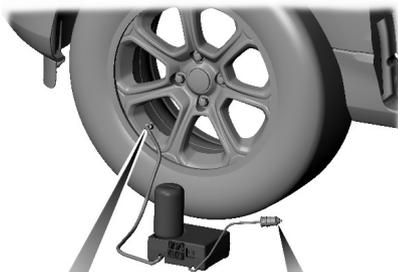
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch (D) is in the OFF position and the pressure release valve (F) is closed by turning it fully clockwise.

## Wheels and Tires



E262403

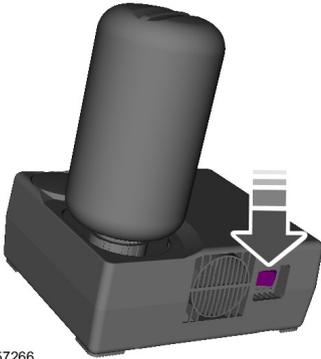
8. Pull the protective cap (G) from the hose (H). Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.



E261901

9. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector (E) into the 12 volt DC socket in the vehicle. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 120).
10. Start the engine.
11. Switch the compressor on.

# Wheels and Tires



E257266

- Inflate the tire for no longer than 15 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 26 psi (1.8 bar) and a maximum of 51 psi (3.5 bar). Move the compressor switch (D) to the OFF position and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge (J).

**Note:** If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 26 psi (180 kPa) within 15 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. Stop and call roadside assistance.

**Note:** When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after a few seconds.

**Note:** After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored provided that the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.

- Remove the power plug (E) from the 12-volt power point.
- Unscrew the hose (H) from the tire valve and put the protective cap (G) back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

**Note:** Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the hose (H) while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.

- Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of sealant residue.
- Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely in your vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.
- Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 3.7 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- After 4 mi (6 km), stop and check the tire pressure.

**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.

## Second stage: checking tire pressure

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



E175983

- Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

# Wheels and Tires

2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. With the compressor off, the gage of the kit will display the tire inflation pressure.

**Note:** *If you are proceeding from the First stage: Reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (1.4 bar), stop and call roadside assistance. If tire pressure is above 20 psi (1.4 bar), continue to the next step.*

4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. The tire pressure should be checked with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unscrew the compressor hose from the valve stem and re-install the valve cap. Leaving the sealant bottle attached to the compressor unit, safely store in your vehicle the tire sealant and inflator kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap.

## What to do after the tire has been sealed

**Note:** *After the sealing compound has been used, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 124 mi (200 km). The sealed tire should be inspected immediately.*

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 124 mi (200 km) by performing the procedure from Second stage: Checking tire pressure.

Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the trim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.

After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister and hose. Sealant canister and hose service kits can be obtained at an authorized Ford dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of by your local authorized Ford dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

## TIRE CARE

### Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E 142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The tire Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

# Wheels and Tires

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 ©)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction AA A B C

 **WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C

 **WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory

# Wheels and Tires

---

test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## Glossary of Tire Terminology

**Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

**Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

**Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

**Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi (2.41 bar)[36 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

**PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

**Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

**Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position) or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

**B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

**Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

**Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

# Wheels and Tires

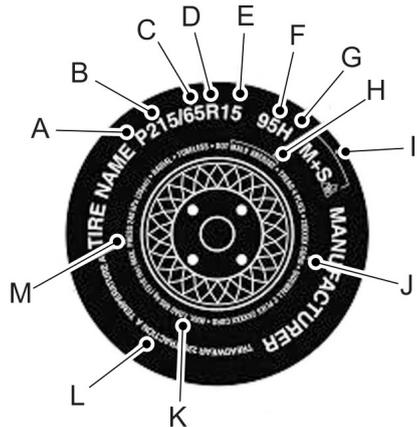
**Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter, this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

## Wheels and Tires

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are

# Wheels and Tires

---

the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

## **J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:**

Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

## **L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

## **M. Maximum Inflation**

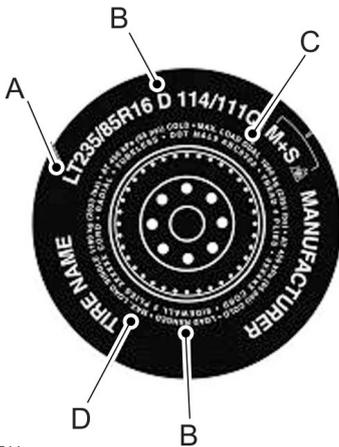
**Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch

# Wheels and Tires

post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

**A. LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

**B. Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

**C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

**D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

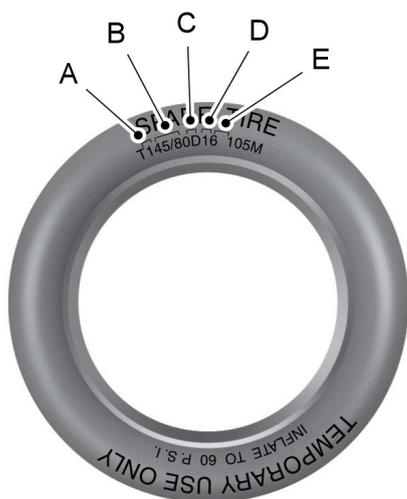
## Information on T Type Tires

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

# Wheels and Tires



E142545

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport-utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

## Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

## Wheels and Tires



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label

(affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

# Wheels and Tires

---

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

**Note:** *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers], never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

**Note:** *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type mini-spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

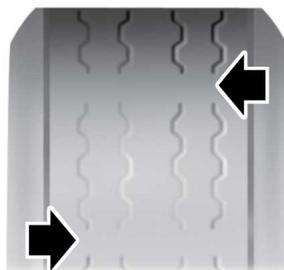
# Wheels and Tires

## Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

## Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to  $\frac{1}{16}$ th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to  $\frac{1}{16}$ th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

## Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed

# Wheels and Tires

or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

## Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and

describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a United States DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The

## Wheels and Tires

recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

 **WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

 **WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

 **WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

# Wheels and Tires

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

## Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

Observe posted speed limits.

Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.

Avoid potholes and objects on the road.

Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage.

If a tire is under-inflated, check the tire for damage. If the tire is not damaged inflate it to the recommended tire pressure.

If a tire is damaged, have it replaced immediately. If your vehicle has a spare wheel, fit the spare wheel immediately and have the damaged tire replaced as soon as possible. If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel, it has a temporary mobility kit.

# Wheels and Tires

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

## Tire Rotation



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always

perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

**Note:** *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

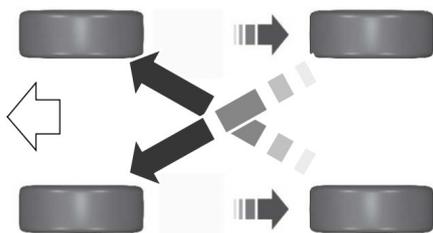
**Note:** *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Front-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).

# Wheels and Tires



E142547

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

## USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 45°F (7°C) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above 19°F (-7°C). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below 19°F (-7°C). If the tires have been subjected to 19°F (-7°C) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 41°F (5°C) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire

inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

# Wheels and Tires

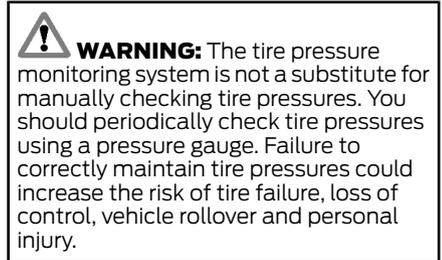
The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates you may need to use snow chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specification) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels. Follow these guidelines when using traction devices:

- Use 0.3937 in (10 mm) or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire with 205/60 R16 92H or 205/50 R17 93H XL. Not all S-class snow chains meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device. (Any Lincoln or Ford passenger vehicle).
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on only on the front axle.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When installing tire chains or cables, make sure they are the proper size for the tires on your vehicle and are installed according to the chain manufacturer's suggestions.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not extend beyond the wheel or touch the wheel, any wiring, brake lining.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- When driving with snow chains or cables, do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer; whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains or cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the chains or cables and prevent vehicle damage.

- Remove the chains or cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use the chains or cables on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare tire is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare tire.

If you have any questions regarding snow tires or snow chains, please contact your authorized dealer.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



**Note:** You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

**Note:** If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

# Wheels and Tires

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

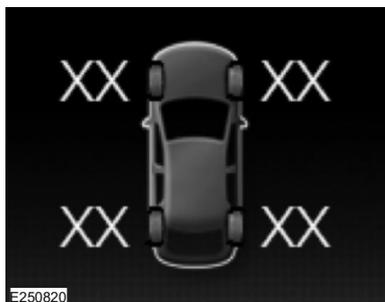
**Note:** *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

# Wheels and Tires

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 88). The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once

the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

### When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

### When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

# Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <b>Inflating your tires</b> in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed</b> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed</b> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## When Inflating Your Tires



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

# Wheels and Tires

## How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This

lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## LUG NUTS

### Lug Nut Torque



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	lb.ft (Nm)
M12 x 1.5	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)
M12 x 1.5 <sup>1</sup>	41 lb.ft (55 Nm)

<sup>1</sup>Spare Wheel carrier.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

<b>Engine</b>	<b>2.0L GDI</b>
Cubic inches	121
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	.034 - .036 in. (.85 - .95 mm)
Compression ratio	12.0:1

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

<b>Engine</b>	<b>1.0L EcoBoost</b>
Cubic inches	61
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-2-3
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.026 – 0.030 in. (0.65 – 0.75 mm)
Compression ratio	10.0:1

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## TRANSMISSION SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

### Gear Ratios

Item	Ratio
1st gear	4.584:1
2nd gear	2.964:1
3rd gear	1.912:1
4th gear	1.446:1
5th gear	1.000:1
6th gear	0.746:1
Reverse gear	2.943:1
Final drive	3.51:1

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## TRANSMISSION SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

### Gear Ratios

Item	Ratio
1st gear	4.584:1
2nd gear	2.964:1
3rd gear	1.912:1
4th gear	1.446:1
5th gear	1.000:1
6th gear	0.746:1
Reverse gear	2.943:1
Final drive	3.440:1

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1935
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BAGM-48H6-760
Spark plugs	SP-538A
Cabin air filter	FP-69
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2963 (driver side) WW-2964 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1108

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 385).

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1935
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BAGM-48H6-760
Spark plugs	SP-535
Cabin air filter	FP-69
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2963 (driver side) WW-2964 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1108

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 385).



# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH REAR GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX XXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

## TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXXX LB/ XXXXX KG  
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXL REAR GAWR: XXXXLB WITH  
 XXXXKG WITH XXXXKG WITH  
 XXXX/XXXXXXXXX TIRES XXX/XXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXX.XX RIMS XXXX.XX RIMS  
 AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX X XX X XX X XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

E142806

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission 6F Mid-Range	6
Six-speed automatic transmission 6F 15	7

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** The air conditioning

refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	1.1 gal (4.3 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	1.0 gal (3.9 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	1.9 gal (7.2 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity. <sup>1</sup>	2.5 gal (9.3 L)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	13.6 gal (51.6 L)
Washer system fill capacity.	1.2 gal (4.5 L)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity.	1.65 lb (0.75 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity.	4.1 fl oz (120 ml)

<sup>1</sup>Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes. Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking and filling.

### Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.2 gal (0.7 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

### Specifications

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 - Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (U.S.) Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 - Super Premium Motor Oil / Huile moteur de très haute qualité SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® (Canada) XO-5W20-Q1SP (U.S.) CXO-5W20-LSP6 (Canada)	WSS-M2C945-B1
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® (Canada) VC-3DIL-B (U.S.) CVC-3DIL-B (Canada)	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® (Canada) PM-20 (U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2
Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid / MERCON® ULV huile pour boîtes automatique Motorcraft® (Canada) XT-12-QULV (U.S. & Canada)	MERCON® ULV/WSS-M2C949-A
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-32-B2 (U.S.) CXC-37-A/B/D/F (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
R-1234yf Refrigerant (U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf (Canada) YN-33-A (U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA (Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil (U.S.)	WSS-M2C300-A2

# Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft® (Canada) YN-35 (U.S. & Canada)	

**Note:** Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® ULV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® ULV transmission fluid.



E142732



E275759

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

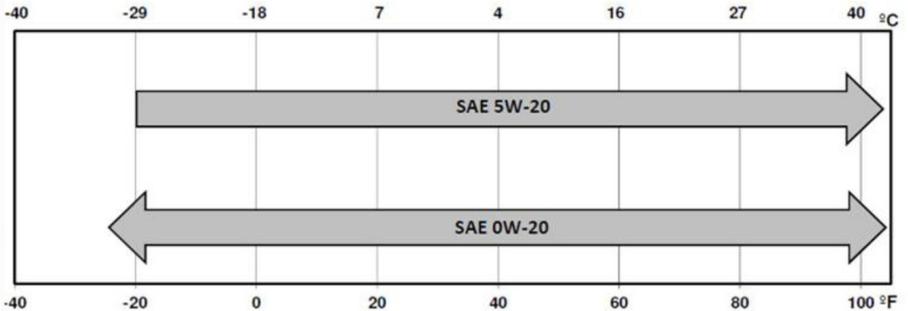
## Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil: Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 XO-0W20-Q1SP	WSS-M2C947-B1



E240522

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	1.1 gal (4.3 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	1.0 gal (3.9 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	1.8 gal (7 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity. <sup>1</sup>	2.5 gal (9.3 L)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	13.6 gal (51.6 L)
Washer system fill capacity.	1.2 gal (4.5 L)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity.	0.99 lb (0.45 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity.	4.1 fl oz (120 ml)

<sup>1</sup>Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes. Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking and filling.

## Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.2 gal (0.7 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

## Specifications

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 - Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (U.S.) Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 - Super Premium Motor Oil / Huile moteur de très haute qualité SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® (Canada) XO-5W20-Q1SP (U.S.) CXO-5W20-LSP6 (Canada)	WSS-M2C945-B1
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® (Canada) VC-3DIL-B (U.S.) CVC-3DIL-B (Canada)	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid / Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft® (Canada) XT-10-QLVC (U.S.) CXT-10-LV6 (Canada)	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® (Canada) PM-20 (U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2
R-1234yf Refrigerant (U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf (Canada) YN-33-A (U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA (Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil (U.S.) Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft® (Canada) YN-35 (U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C300-A2
Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant (U.S.)	WSP-M2C197-A

# Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Axle Lubricant / Lubrifiant pour essieux de très haute qualité SAE 80W-90 Motorcraft® (Canada) XY-80W90-QL (U.S.) CXY-80W90-IL (Canada)	

**Note:** Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® ULV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® ULV transmission fluid.



E142732



E275759

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

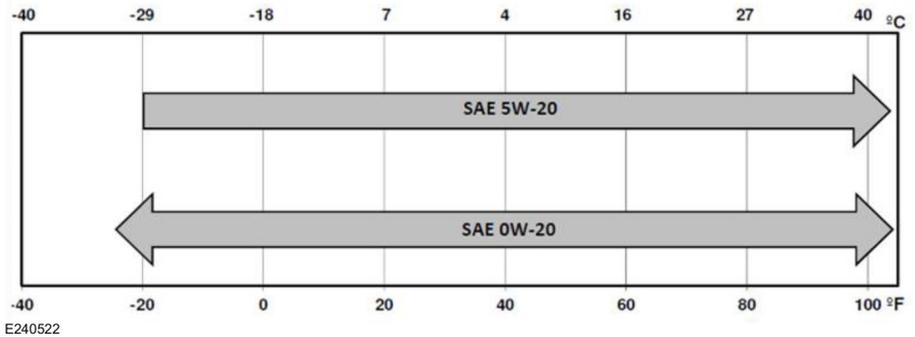
## Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil: Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 XO-0W20-Q1SP	WSS-M2C947-B1



# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 or .WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.

### FCC Notice

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: A8DGEN3-1D

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

# Audio System

## Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



E248938

## Adjusting the Volume



E248939

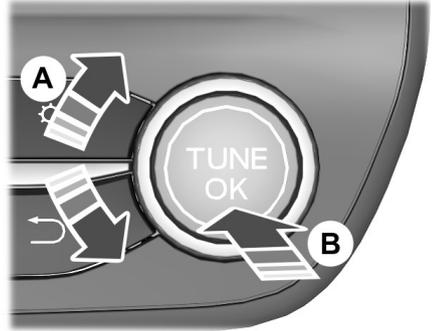
## Selecting the Radio



Press the button to select radio mode.

Press the button again to display the available radio sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available radio sources.

## Changing Radio Stations



E248341

A Manual tuning.

B Station name tuning.

**Note:** You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

**Note:** You can recall radio stations using the numeric preset buttons.

## Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode.

Press the button again to display the available media sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources.

# Audio System

## Scrolling Through the Menu Options



E248947

## Selecting a Menu Option



E248946

## Returning to the Previous Screen



### Seek Up and Next Track Button



### Seek Down and Previous Track Button



### Pausing or Playing Media



In radio mode, press the button to mute the signal. Press the button again to restore the signal.

In media mode, press the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

## Apps



Press the button to enable or disable the control of a mobile app that is running on your Bluetooth or USB device.

## System Settings



Press the button to adjust general system settings, for example voice features, display, clock and others.

## Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

# Audio System

## Using a Cell Phone



You can make a call from a recent call list, contact list or dial a number.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

### Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E249190

### Adjusting the Volume



E249189

# Audio System

## Changing Radio Stations



E249187

A Manual tuning.

**Note:** You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

## Seek Up and Next Track Button



## Seek Down and Previous Track Button



## Pausing or Playing Media



In radio mode, press the button to mute the signal. Press the button again to restore the signal.

In media mode, press the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

## Switching the Screen On and Off



## Sound Settings



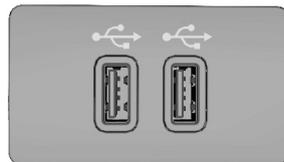
Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

## USB PORT (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E242003

## Audio System

---

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC™** (page 292).

## GENERAL INFORMATION

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist or Emergency Assistance and applications via SYNC AppLink.\*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

\*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

## Support

SYNC support is available at your regional Ford website. See **SYNC™ Troubleshooting** (page 301).

## SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

## Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mi (5 km).

## Safety Information



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other

things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a

court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the section on 911 Assist. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 296).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is around you.

### Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available voice commands appears in the display.

### Global Voice Commands

These voice commands are always available. You can say them at any time.

Global voice commands	
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
Cancel	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by pressing seek up, seek down, or holding the voice button for two or more seconds.

## Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish, followed by a single tone. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can cancel a voice session by pressing and holding the voice button.

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

### Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Voice Settings	
<b>Then either of the following:</b>	
Interaction Mode Standard	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. (Recommended for first time users.)
Interaction Mode Advanced	Provides less audible interaction and guidance.

## Phone Confirmation

Using phone confirmations the system asks you to verify before placing any calls.

**To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:**

Voice Command	Action and Description
Voice Settings	
<b>Then any of the following:</b>	
Phone Confirmation Off	When enabled, this feature will prompt you to confirm any voice initiated call command prior to the call being placed.
Phone Confirmation On	The system will make a best guess; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

### Pairing a Phone

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

### Using the Audio System

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **Settings** button.
3. Select Bluetooth from the menu.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device.

7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone and downloading your phonebook.

## Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

### Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Pair Phone	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

## Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button. You can do things like place a phone call and access text messages.

When prompted, say a command. See the following table for example commands.

Voice Command
___ List of Commands
Help
Call ___
Dial ___
Text Messages

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a contact or phone number.

## Phone Controls

Use the phone buttons on your steering wheel to answer, reject, or hang up a call.

## Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages, as well as access phone and system settings.

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the phone menu.
2. Scroll through the menu to view contacts, text messages, and the phone dialer.

## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- SYNC AppLink: Allows you to connect to and use certain applications (if your phone is compatible).

These features may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

## 911 Assist



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** If any user switches 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off, either a voice message plays or a display message or an icon comes on when your vehicle is started and after a previously paired phone connects.

**Note:** Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone.

See **SYNC™** (page 292). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 183). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

### Setting 911 Assist On or Off

**Press the Settings button then select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
911 Assist	Select the desired option, on or off.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

- A connected Bluetooth enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

## In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel".

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle are able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## 911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

## 911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

## SYNC Mobile Apps

The system enables voice and steering wheel control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

**Note:** *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

**Note:** *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

**Note:** *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

**Note:** *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website*

**Note:** *Availability of SYNC AppLink enabled Apps will vary by region.*

**Note:** *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps work automatically with no setup. Other apps want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

## To Access Using the SYNC Menu

**Press the Mobile Apps button to access the menu on-screen. Then select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Find	Scroll through the list of

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mobile Apps	available applications and select a particular app.

**Note:** *If you cannot find a compatible SYNC AppLink app, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

## To Access Using Voice Commands

**Press the voice button, then when prompted say:**

Voice Command	Action and Description
Mobile Applications	Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. When an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example "Play Playlist Road Trip".
List Applications	SYNC lists all of the currently available mobile apps.
Find Applications	Searches your connected mobile device for SYNC-compatible mobile apps.
Help	Use this command to discover the available voice commands.

## App Permissions

App permissions are organized by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app such as, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel economy, fuel consumption, engine speed, rain sensor, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, and head lamp status.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information such as, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine revolutions per minute, gear position, braking events, steering wheel angle, and accelerator pedal position.

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state. Push notifications may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

**Note:** *You only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

**Note:** *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

## Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place.

**Note:** *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

**Note:** *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

SYNC supports digital media sources including: iPod, Bluetooth devices, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

### Media Sources

The **AUX** or **MEDIA** button allows you to view and select available media sources.

Press the **AUX** or **MEDIA** button to view your sources. Use the directional arrows and OK button to select your source. You can also use the steering wheel audio controls.

### Audio Voice Commands



Press the voice button. You can do things like play a specific song or album, skip to the next song, or tune to a radio station. When prompted, say a command. See the following table for example commands. Not all commands may be available on your vehicle.

Command
___ List of Commands
Help
Pause
Play
Next Track
Previous Track
AM ___
FM ___
CD Player

# SYNC™

Command
Sirius Channel ___
USB
Bluetooth Audio

Use your regional Ford website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours).

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as an artist, station, or media source.

Market	Website(s)
North America	<a href="http://www.SYNCMyRide.com">www.SYNCMyRide.com</a> <a href="http://www.SYNCMyRide.ca">www.SYNCMyRide.ca</a> <a href="http://www.sync-maroute.ca">www.sync-maroute.ca</a>

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	<p>This is a phone-dependent feature.</p> <p>This may be a possible phone malfunction.</p>	<p>Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</p> <p>Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</p> <p>Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.</p> <p>Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.</p>

# SYNC™

<b>Phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
<p>The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.</p>	<p>This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.</p>	<p>Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.</p> <p>If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory.</p> <p>Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.</p> <p>Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.</p>
<p>I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.</p>	<p>This is a phone-dependent feature.</p> <p>This may be a possible phone malfunction.</p>	<p>Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</p> <p>Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</p> <p>Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again.</p> <p>Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone.</p> <p>Update your device's firmware.</p> <p>Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting.</p>

# SYNC™

<b>Phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature.  This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.  Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.
I cannot return to the Phone menu when selecting a contact.	You are on the Select a Character screen.	Press the Phone button to return to the Phone menu.

<b>USB and media issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.  Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.  Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port.  Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function.

# SYNC™

<b>USB and media issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
	The device is not connected.	Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information. The file may be corrupted. The song may have copy-right protection, which does not allow it to play.	Make sure that all song details are populated.  Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.
I cannot change the Sirius station.	Sirius Replay is active.	Switch radio bands and return to Sirius or switch the feature off. You can then change the Sirius station using the directional buttons.

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.  You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.  After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
	<p>You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.</p> <p>The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.</p>	<p>Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.</p> <p>Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".</p> <p>If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".</p> <p>Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.</p>
<p>SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.</p>	<p>You may be using the wrong voice commands.</p> <p>You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.</p>	<p>Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.</p> <p>Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".</p> <p>Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting.</p>

# SYNC™

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
	<p>The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.</p> <p>Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.</p> <p>Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.</p>	<p>The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".</p> <p>Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them.</p> <p>If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".</p>

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
<p>AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.</p>	<p>An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.</p>	<p>Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.</p>
<p>My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.</p>	<p>AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.</p>	<p>Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or</p>

# SYNC™

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
		login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	<p>Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle.</p> <p>On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit" or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.</p> <p>On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.</p>
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth bug on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off Bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

# SYNC™

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

<b>SYNC System Reset</b>
The SYNC system in your vehicle has System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (Such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. Release both buttons after 2-3 seconds. Please allow a few minutes for the reset to complete. After a few minutes has passed you can resume using the SYNC system.

# SYNC™ 3

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

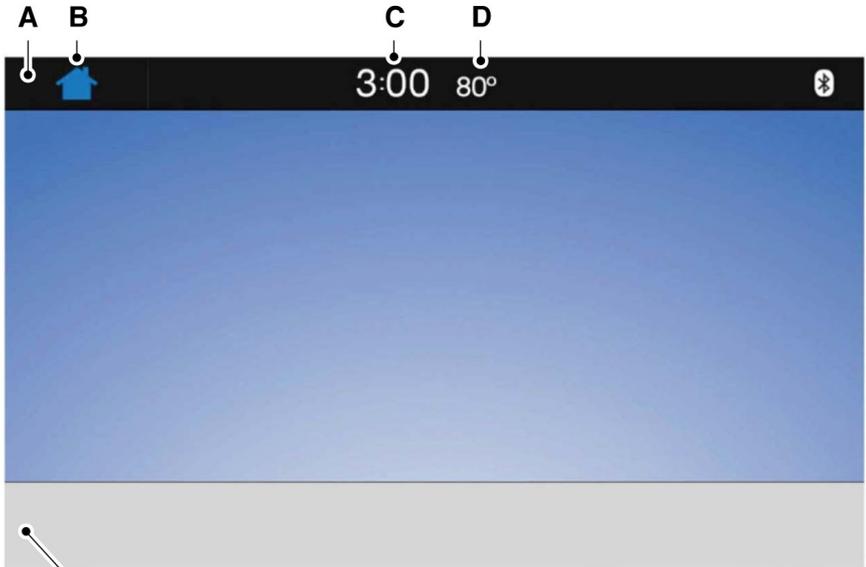
## Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC AppLink.

### Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button highlights when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



E282194

# SYNC™ 3

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See <b>Settings</b> (page 354).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

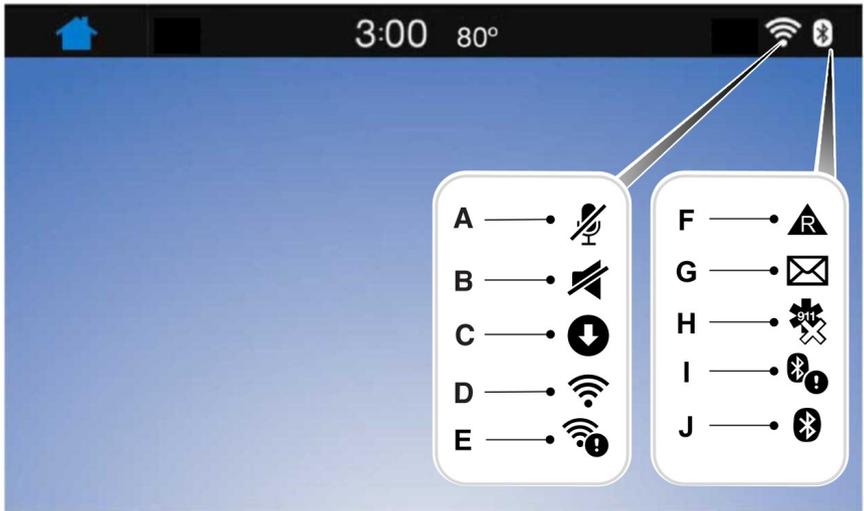
The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

**Note:** *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

## The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.

# SYNC™ 3



E223058

Callout	Item	Description
A	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
B	Mute	This icon displays when the audio system is muted.
C	Download	This icon displays when SYNC 3 has received a software update. Pressing the icon will show more details about the new software.
D	Wi-Fi	This icon displays when the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.
E	Wi-Fi in Range	This icon displays when an available Wi-Fi network is within range.
F	Roaming	This icon displays when your cell phone is roaming.
G	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.

# SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description
H	911 Assist Off	This icon displays when 911 Assist is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
I	Bluetooth Alert	This icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert.
J	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

## Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iPhone or Android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

## Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and eyes on the road. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 293).

## Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

**VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.

**Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

## SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to fast seek.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

## SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to fast seek.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

**PHONE ACCEPT:** Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

**PHONE REJECT:** Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

**Note:** On some models, **SEEK NEXT** may be combined with **PHONE REJECT** and **SEEK PREVIOUS** may be combined with **PHONE ACCEPT**.

See **Steering Wheel** (page 66).

## Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power** or **VOL:** Press to switch the audio system on and off, or turn to adjust the volume.
- **Sound Settings:** Press to access the audio settings.
- **Seek:** Press to seek through radio stations or audio tracks.
- **Play** or **Pause:** Press to either play or pause a track.
- **Tune:** Turn to manually tune radio stations.
- **Display:** Press to switch the display on or off.

## 911 Assist



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.

**Note:** Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, by visiting:

Website
<a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a> <a href="http://www.syncmyride.ca">www.syncmyride.ca</a> <a href="http://www.syncmaroute.ca">www.syncmaroute.ca</a>

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restraints and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch 911 Assist on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 354).

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

## In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## 911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

## 911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

## Safety Information



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

# SYNC™ 3

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h). Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

## Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following table for more specific examples.

<b>Restricted features</b>	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active (If equipped).
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

## Creating an Owner Account

Why do I need an owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

## FordPass™ Connect (If Equipped)

With a FordPass-equipped vehicle, you can use FordPass to track your vehicle's location and remotely access vehicle features such as start, lock and unlock and vehicle status including fuel level and approximate mileage. You can also schedule specific times to remotely start your vehicle so it is ready to hit the road as soon as you are. FordPass is an optional feature on select vehicles. FordPass is available through a free download via the Apple App Store® or Google Play™. Message and data rates may apply. Services may be limited by mobile phone network coverage area.

- FCC: LHJ-FANW
- IC: 2807E-FANW

## Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

## USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

Please refer to the website for any further actions.

## Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

# SYNC™ 3

## To enable automatic updates using Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-fi & Hotspot	
System Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 354). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 368).

## If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

## To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

## Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-8:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

United States: 1-800-392-3673.

Canada: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

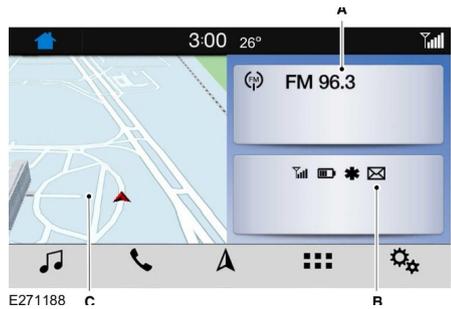
## Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you sell or transfer your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 354). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

## HOME SCREEN



- A See **Entertainment** (page 325).
- B See **Phone** (page 335).
- C See **Navigation** (page 341).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and phone. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

# SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

## Audio Voice Commands

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

**To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:**

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ *	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also turn to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
FM ___ HD ___ *	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as "88.7 FM HD 1".

# SYNC™ 3

Voice command	Description
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

\* This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

## Phone Voice Commands

### Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

**To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:**

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See <b>Settings</b> (page 354).

# SYNC™ 3

## Making Calls

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for

phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

### Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as "Dial 867-5309".

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

### Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

## Text Message Voice Commands

### To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

# SYNC™ 3

## Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

### Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

### You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

### In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Shows the current route.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

# SYNC™ 3

## Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

## SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

# SYNC™ 3

## Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

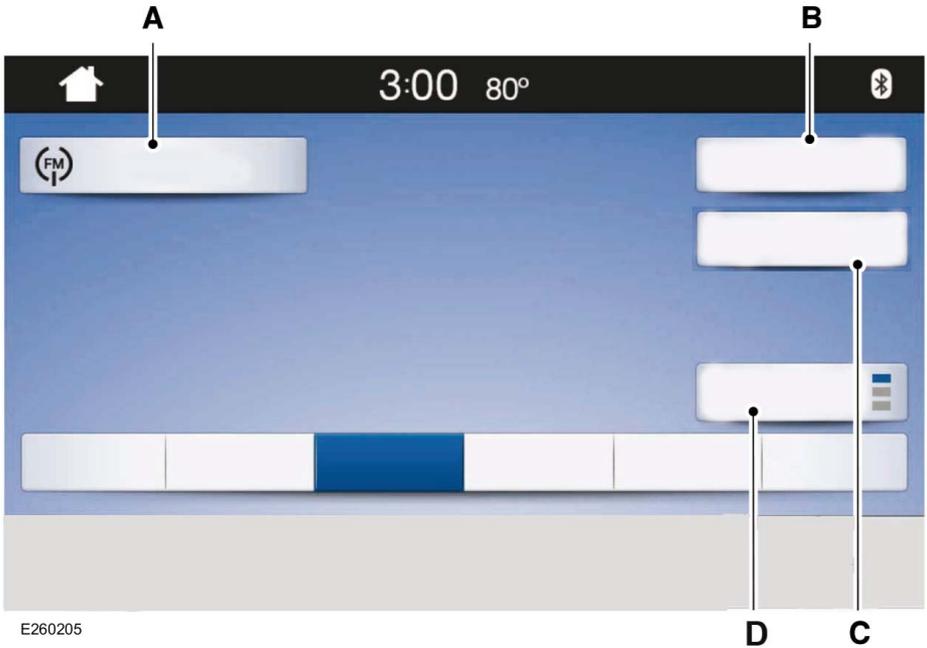
You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

**Note:** Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.

*To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.*

## ENTERTAINMENT

# SYNC™ 3



E260205

Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Browse <sup>1</sup>
D	Presets

<sup>1</sup>If equipped.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

## Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

# SYNC™ 3

Menu item	
AM	
FM	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

## AM/FM Radio

### Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

### To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

### Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

## Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

## SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

**Note:** *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*

# SYNC™ 3



E234451

SiriusXM satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SiriusXM satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SiriusXM satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

**Note:** *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

## The following buttons are available for SiriusXM:

Menu item	Action and description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	

# SYNC™ 3

Menu item	Action and description	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts. See <b>Settings</b> (page 354).	

## Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

There are three preset banks available for SiriusXM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

## Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. See **Settings** (page 354).

## SiriusXM Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

# SYNC™ 3

Troubleshooting tips		
Message	Cause	Action
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SiriusXM satellite or SiriusXM tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SiriusXM has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

## HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

**Note:** This feature may not be available in all markets.

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 354).

**Note:** HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.

# SYNC™ 3

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

<b>Website</b>
<a href="http://www.hdradio.com">www.hdradio.com</a>

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

**Note:** *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

## When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

**Note:** *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

# SYNC™ 3

## HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

<b>Potential reception issues</b>	
Reception area	<p>If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.</p> <p>If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.</p>
Station blending	<p>When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.</p>

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

<b>Potential station issues</b>		
<b>Issues</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Action</b>
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.

# SYNC™ 3

Potential station issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. <sup>1</sup>
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> You can find the form here:

Website
<a href="http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback">http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback</a>

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from DTS Inc. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS Inc. Ford Motor Company and DTS Inc. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

## Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

### The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

# SYNC™ 3

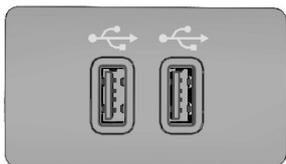
For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or

backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio Books Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

## USB Port



E242003

The USB port is in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

## Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or bluetooth-enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content.

## Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

# SYNC™ 3

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

### To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

### Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device
<b>Then select:</b>
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

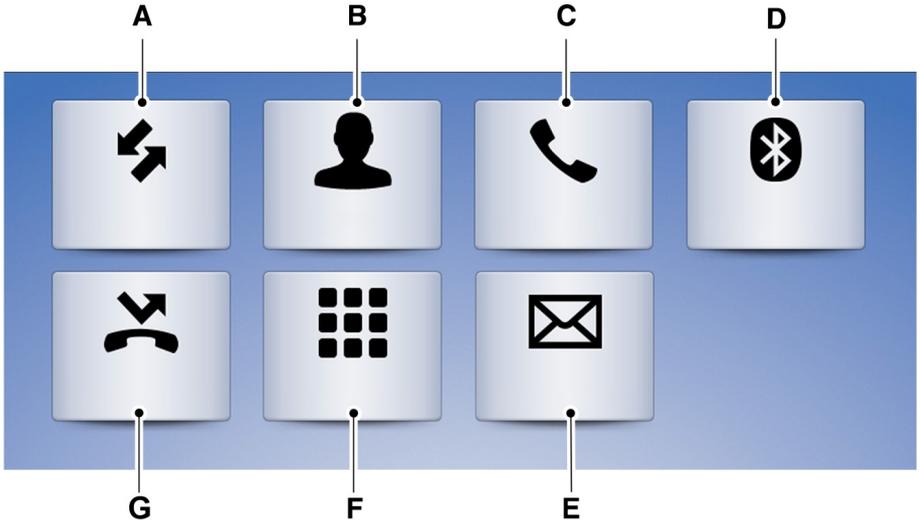
- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

## Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

# SYNC™ 3



E251249

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts.			

## SYNC™ 3

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
D	Change Device	Gives you access to the list of paired or connected Bluetooth devices allowing you to change or select a device.
E	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.
F	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.
		Call
G	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to reject all incoming calls automatically. Text message notifications do not display on the screen. All ringtones and alerts are set to silent.

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

### Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 319). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

## Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

**To accept the call, select:**

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

**To reject the call, select:**

Menu Item
Reject

**Note:** You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

## During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

# SYNC™ 3

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

## Text Messaging

**Note:** Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

**Note:** Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).

## Receiving a Text Message

**When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the sender name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

## Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

### Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **Entertainment** (page 325).

# SYNC™ 3

2. Follow the prompts on the touchscreen.
3. Follow the prompts that appear on your phone to allow access to Apple CarPlay.

After completing the setup, your phone connects to CarPlay automatically when plugged into a USB port.

### To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

**Note:** Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.

### Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

**Note:** The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.

2. Plug your device into a USB port. See **Entertainment** (page 325).
3. Follow the prompt on the touchscreen.

4. Follow the prompts that appear on your device.

**Note:** You may be prompted to update additional apps on your device (this may require mobile data usage).

### To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

**Note:** You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

**Note:** Contact Google for Android Auto support.

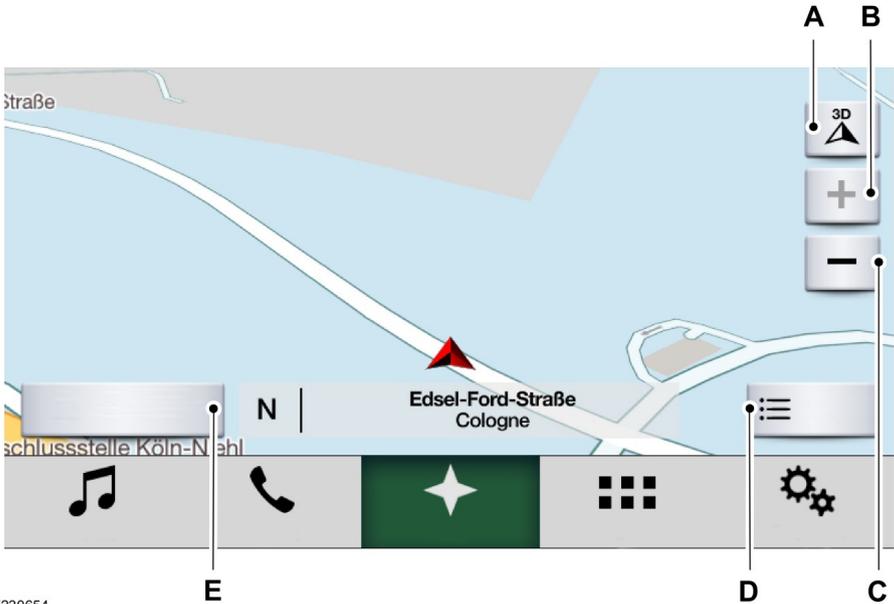
## NAVIGATION

Your navigation system can be shown in three modes, Map Mode, Destination Mode, and Map Search Mode.

### Map Mode

Map mode appears in 2D or 3D view and shows the current position of your vehicle on the map.

# SYNC™ 3



E230654

Callout	Item	Description	
A	Map view	Heading up (2D)	Shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen
		North up (2D)	Shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.
		3D map mode	Provides an electrical perspective of the map in the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen.
B	Zoom in	Select the zoom in button to see a closer view of the map or change to auto zoom. You can also use a pinch gesture to zoom in.	
C	Zoom out	Select the zoom out button to see a farther away view of the map or change to auto zoom. You can also use a pinch gesture to zoom out.	
D	Menu	Access the route guidance options including:	

# SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description	
		Screen View	Traffic List (If Equipped)
		When route guidance is active it shows features including:	
		Cancel Route	Route overview Detour
E	Destination	Shows all available search options, including:	
		General search	POIs Favorites

## Destination Mode

**To set a destination, press:**

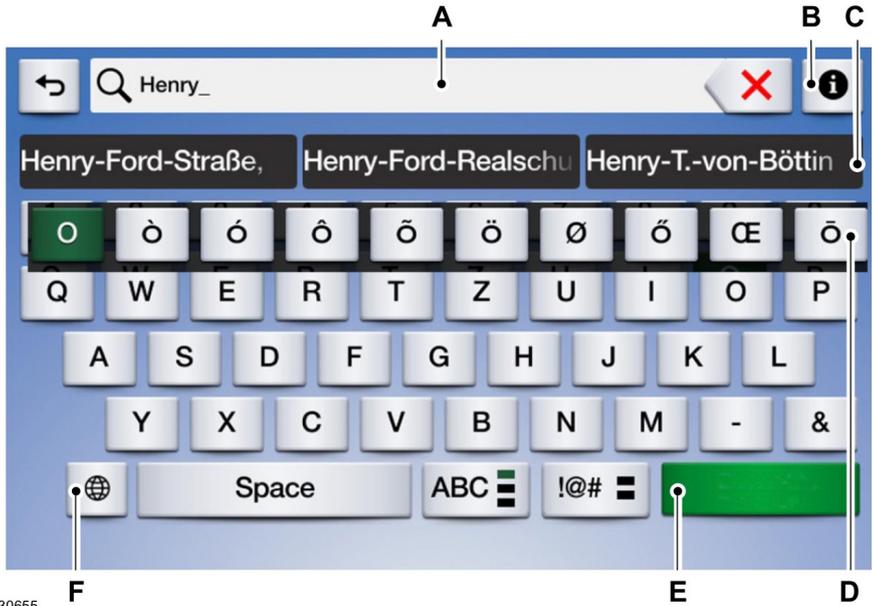
Menu Item	Description
Destination	Pressing this button (Callout E above) provides a list of different search options for a destination.
You can then select:	
Search	Pressing this button allows you to set a destination using the free text search. More information on this option is available in the next table.
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.
	Delete All Select this option to remove all previous destinations.
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays.
	To set your Home, press:
	Home A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays.
	To set your Work:

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Description	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	Hotel	
	ATM	
	See All	Press to view additional categories.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	
	Along Route	
	Near Destination	
	In a City	

# SYNC™ 3

## Free Text Search



E230655

Callout	Item	Description
A	Search bar	<p>You can enter a navigation destination in the following formats:</p> <p>Street Address</p> <p>number street city (country) street number city (country)</p> <p>Providing the country name is only required when you are entering an address for a country other than the country you are currently located in.</p> <p>Examples: Germany: Henry-Ford-Straße 1 Köln England: CM13 3BW France: 55 Rue du Faubourg Saint-Honoré Paris</p>
		City

# SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description
		or ZIP Code
		Point of Interest (name or category)
		Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)
		Latitude and Longitude (##.##### , ##.#####) This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted.
B	Info Icon	Provide more info about the search input.
C	Auto Suggest	Gives auto suggested destinations to select as you type.
D	Key pop-up	A long press on a key provides the variant of the letter if available.
E	Search	Press this button to execute a search. If your search provides multiple results, SYNC will give you a list of the best matching destinations.
F	Keyboard switch	Provides a list of available keyboard layouts

## Route Guidance Mode

**Once you have chosen your destination it displays on the map and you can select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	Select this option to start the route guidance. Per default, SYNC selects the preferred route (the default is to use the fastest route). You can update this in the Navigation settings. See <b>Settings</b> (page 354).
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.

# SYNC™ 3



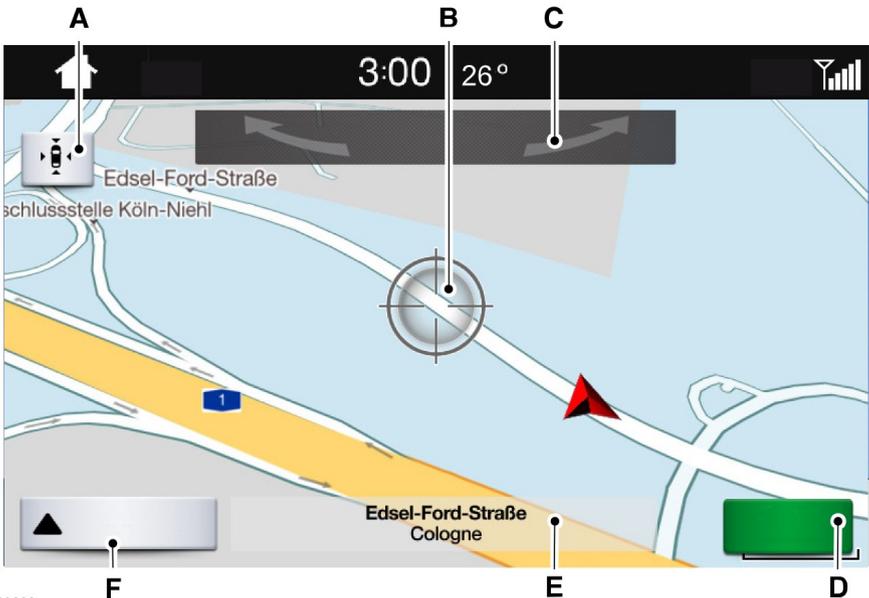
Callout	Item	Description
A	Next Turn	Press the maneuver icon to repeat the next guidance instruction.
B	Point of Interest	You can choose up to three POI categories to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are close together or are at the same location, a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

# SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description
		Note: If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.
C	Estimated Time of Arrival	Press this icon to switch between estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
D	Bottom Bar	Displays the current road if available.
E	Mute	Press this button to mute the voice guidance instructions. You can select between three guidance prompt options. See <b>Settings</b> (page 354).

**Note:** To change the voice prompt volume, turn the volume knob when a voice guidance prompt plays.

## Map search Mode



E230868

# SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description
A	Re-center	Press this button to re-center the map to the current position of the vehicle. You are taken to the previous active navigation mode (map mode or route guidance mode).
B	Crosshair	Shows the selected location on the map. You can swipe or use pinch to readjust it.
C	Rotation bar	The rotation bar is only available when 3D mode is active. Swipe over the bar to rotate the map to the left or right.
D	Start	Push this button to select your destination.
E	Bottom bar	This bar displays the name of the destination you select.
F	Controls	Press this button to fade in the feature bar and navigation buttons

## Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

### To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
<b>You can then select:</b>		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.
	Highway Exit Info	Exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation.

# SYNC™ 3

<b>Button</b>							
	Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI location as a waypoint or destination if desired.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Turn List</td> <td>Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Avoid</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.</td> </tr> </table>	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:		Avoid		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.
Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:						
	Avoid						
	The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.						
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See <b>Settings</b> (page 354).						
Where Am I?	Provides your current city and the nearest road.						
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:							
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.						
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.						
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.						
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See <b>Waypoints</b> later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.						
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.						
	Optimize Order	The system sets the order for you.					
	Waypoint items	Press any waypoint item to move up or down or to delete the item from the list.					
	Go	Proceeds to the next screen, where you can start the new route.					
Traffic List							

These options may not be available in all markets.

# SYNC™ 3

## Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. Up to five waypoints can be added by repeating the process steps below.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

Menu Item		
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location.	
	Optimize Order	The system sets the order for you.
	Waypoint items	Press any waypoint item to move up or down or to delete the item from the list.
	Go	Proceeds to the next screen, where you can start the new route.

## Navigation Map Updates (if Equipped)

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

**Note:** This feature may not be available in some markets.

## APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps.

Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

**Note:** Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.

**Note:** You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.

**Note:** iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.

**Note:** For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit:

Websites
<a href="http://owner.ford.com">owner.ford.com</a> <a href="http://www.syncmyride.ca">www.syncmyride.ca</a>

# SYNC™ 3

Websites
www.syncmaroute.ca

**Note:** Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.

**Note:** We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data.

**Note:** AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through AppLink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.

**Note:** In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the app needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.

**Note:** If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

## Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

**Note:** You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.

**Note:** Ford reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.

**Note:** Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 354).

## App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

**Note:** You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.

**Note:** If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.

## SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if Equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your

primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.

**Note:** In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.

**Note:** A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to [www.siriusxm.com/travellink](http://www.siriusxm.com/travellink) for more information.

**Note:** Visit [www.siriusxm.com/traffic](http://www.siriusxm.com/traffic) and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.

**Note:** Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.
Traffic Nearby	
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

## Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

## SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.

# SYNC™ 3

Sound Settings	
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

## Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.	
Gracenote® Management	Switches on and off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.		

# SYNC™ 3

## Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The

arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

## Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

## Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

### To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.

- Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

**Alternatively, to add a phone, select:**

Menu Item
Add Phone
<b>Then select:</b>
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

- Follow the on-screen instructions.
- Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
- Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.

- The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
- Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

**To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:**

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
<b>You can then select:</b>	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Pressing the info icon next to the device name allows you to see phone and device information

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Manage Contacts		
<b>You can then select:</b>		
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.	
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:	
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>First Name</td> <td>Last Name</td> </tr> </table>	First Name
First Name	Last Name	
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
<b>You can then select:</b>	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringtones.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
<b>You can then select:</b>	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

# SYNC™ 3

**You can enable and disable the following options as well:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

## 911 Assist

**Note:** *This service is only available in the United States and Canada.*

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phone-book as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the 911 Assist call process.

## Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, If Available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

## Sirius XM (If equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Category for Seek	After selecting a category, the seek function only stops on channels that are inside that selected category.
Parental Lockout	Select to create a personal identification number (PIN). This allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.
Edit Alerts	Select to switch on, off or delete alerts.

The Electronic Serial Number is on this screen. This number is necessary to activate, modify or track your account through Sirius XM.

## Navigation

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

# SYNC™ 3

## Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Map Preferences		
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>		
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map. A rest area POI icon may display on the map regardless of this setting.	
	When this feature is active you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

## Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ____ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Use HOV Lanes	The system selects High Occupancy Vehicle or car pool lanes when providing route guidance.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Dynamic Route Guidance	Enable or disable considering traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible.
Avoid Freeways	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids freeways when computing a navigation route.
Avoid Toll Roads	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids Toll Roads when computing a navigation route.
Avoid Ferries/Car Trains	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids the use of Ferries or Trains when computing a navigation route.

## Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Voice and Tones	A tone sounds followed by voice instructions.
Voice Only	Only voice instructions are given.
Tones Only	Only a tone sounds to prompt you.

## Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices send data to us in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place.

**Note:** *All Mobile Apps may not be compatible with the system.*

# SYNC™ 3

**Note:** Standard data rates will apply. We are not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Mobile Apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.		
	You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.		
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:			
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.		
	There are three possible statuses:		
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...
	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Request Update		Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.

**Note:** *We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you give us approval to provide to an app.*

## General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Panel Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About SYNC	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

## Wi-Fi & Hotspot

Access SYNC Wi-Fi and Vehicle Hotspot settings and information.

## System Wi-Fi

You can access the following:

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

## Vehicle Hotspot (If Equipped)

You can access the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi Hotspot On/Off	Allows you to turn the hotspot on and off.
Settings	Allows you to view and edit hotspot settings such as the SSID and password.
Data Usage	Allows you to view your vehicle's hotspot plan and data usage.
Manage Devices	Allows you to manage devices connected to your hotspot.

**Note:** *The Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot (Vehicle Hotspot) may be operational while ignition is On and may remain operational while the ignition is Off.*

**Note:** *The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

**Note:** *It is the account owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred. If the owner would like to remove the vehicle from the account for any reason, please contact your vehicle network carrier for more information.*

**Note:** Data you share, e.g. the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), SIM Card ID, and data plan usage, between us and the vehicle network carrier is used to provide the Vehicle Hotspot service in accordance with your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability, and may be used to enable a seamless transition from an old to new embedded modem and to confirm any successfully delivered updates.

**Note:** For your convenience data usage may be available for monitoring under Settings but may not reflect actual or current usage. The vehicle network carrier is responsible for providing information about your account. Please contact the vehicle network carrier for more information.

**Note:** We may need to update operating system software on your vehicle, including security updates and bug fixes, to keep connected services current, like Vehicle Hotspot, without prior notice to you.

**Note:** If you do not have an active vehicle hotspot data plan, open your web browser and go to a website using the HTTP protocol to be automatically redirected to the vehicle network carrier landing page where you can purchase data. Websites using HTTPS will not automatically redirect.

## Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
<b>Then select from the following:</b>	
Enhanced Park Aids	When the reverse sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green highlights at the top of the image.
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

## Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to active ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

## Vehicle

**Note:** Your vehicle may not have all of these features.

You can select the following features to update their settings.

## Door Keypad Code (If equipped)

Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer.

# SYNC™ 3

## Onboard Modem Serial Number (ESN)

Selecting this button on the settings menu

shows you the ESN number for your system. You need this number for certain registrations such as Satellite Radio.

## Display

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Display Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Calm Screen	Enable this option to have your screen display minimal content. Pressing anywhere on the screen, using the reverse camera, or touching an interactive icon returns the screen to normal content.	
Background	Allows you to select a screen background color.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.	
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

## Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

## Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

**Note:** *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

*United States: 1-800-392-3673*

*Canada: 1-800-565-3673*

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the Ford website.

Website
<a href="http://owner.ford.com">owner.ford.com</a> <a href="http://www.syncmyride.ca">www.syncmyride.ca</a> <a href="http://www.syncmaroute.ca">www.syncmaroute.ca</a>

# SYNC™ 3

<b>Cell phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
There is back-ground noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again. Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phone-book.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
The system says "Phone-book down-loaded" but my SYNC 3 phone-book is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory. You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.

# SYNC™ 3

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to your cell phone's Settings.</li> <li>• Go to the Bluetooth Menu.</li> <li>• Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu.</li> <li>• Turn Show Notifications on.</li> <li>• Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update.</li> </ul> <p>Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone.</p>

# SYNC™ 3

<b>Cell phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
		Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

<b>USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.

# SYNC™ 3

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 325).
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 325).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

# SYNC™ 3

<b>Wi-Fi Issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

## SYNC™ 3

<b>Wi-Fi Issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Connect Mobile Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an AppLink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone

# SYNC™ 3

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
		to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Connect Mobile Apps" on SYNC 3.

## SYNC™ 3

<b>AppLink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

# SYNC™ 3

<b>Applink issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible solution(s)</b>
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the Applink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more Applink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there. Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.	
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone-book.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone-book.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		<b>Helpful Hint:</b> You can select your contact manually. Press <b>PHONE</b> . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

# SYNC™ 3

General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 supports multiple languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>> ) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting please call or visit the Ford Website.

Ford Support	
Customer Relationship Center	United States: 1-800-392-3673
	Canada: 1-800-565-3673
Website	owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

# Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

<b>Web Address (United States)</b>
<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.com">www.Accessories.Ford.com</a>

<b>Web Address (Canada)</b>
<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.ca">www.Accessories.Ford.ca</a>

Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

## **Ford Motor Company will warrant your Ford accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:**

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

## **Exterior Style**

- Front and Rear Splash guards.
- Side window deflectors\*.
- Spoiler.
- Hood deflectors.

## **Interior Style**

- Floor mats.
- Ash cup.
- Floor liners.
- Sunscreen\*.

- Tablet cradle\*.
- Interior light kit.

## **Lifestyle**

- Cargo area protector.
- Cargo net\*.
- Cargo organizer.
- Trailer towing accessories.
- Racks and carriers\*.
- Bluetooth speakers\*.
- Rear seat entertainment\*.

## **Peace of Mind**

- Keyless entry keypad.
- Remote start.
- Vehicle security.
- Wheel locks.
- Roadside assistance kits\*.

Ford Licensed Accessories. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

# Accessories

---

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

# Ford Protect

---

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD PROTECT EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

## **Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)**

Ford Protect extended service plan means peace of mind. It's the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, Insist on Ford Protect extended service plans!

## **Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself**

One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect extended service plan. With Ford Protect extended service plan you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

## **Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components**

There are four mechanical Ford Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it's probably easier to list what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

## **Rental Car Reimbursement**

### ***1st day Rental Benefit***

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we'll give you a loaner to use for the day.

### ***Extended Rental Benefits***

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

## **Roadside Assistance**

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

## **Transferable Coverage**

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Which should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.

# Ford Protect

---

## Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

Ford Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc (if equipped).
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment (if equipped).
- Cabin air filter replacement every 20,000 mi (32,000 km) (electric vehicles only).

## Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect extended service plan. Ford Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Protect extended service plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information; visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 385).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

## Genuine Ford and Motorcraft Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

### Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

**Note:** *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with an information display which displays a message at the proper oil change service interval; the interval is one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) under normal driving conditions.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

If **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change; the oil change must be done within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing. The oil minder system must be reset after each oil change. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 209).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

<b>Check every month</b>
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

<b>Check every six months</b>
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

## Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Clutch operation (manual transmission only)	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Engine air filter	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exhaust system	Steering and linkage
Exterior lamps operation	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure**
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
For oil and fluid leaks	Washer spray and wiper operation
Half-shaft dust boots	

\* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

\*\*If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Your vehicle is equipped with an oil minder system that indicates when the engine oil should be changed under normal operating conditions.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule; the vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** in the information display.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Every 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) or 12 months*
Change engine oil and filter.**
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings.
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

\* Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

\*\* Reset the oil minder system after each engine oil and filter change. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 209).

Other maintenance items <sup>1</sup>	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. <sup>2</sup>
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). <sup>3</sup>
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s). <sup>4</sup>

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<b>Other maintenance items<sup>1</sup></b>	
	Replace timing belt (1.0L, 1.6L engine).
	Replace oil pump drive belt (1.0L engine).

<sup>1</sup> Additional maintenance items can be performed within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

<sup>3</sup> After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

<sup>4</sup> If not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 kilometers).

# Scheduled Maintenance

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to

perform additional maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle occasionally under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

<b>Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace spark plugs.

<b>Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

<b>Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)</b>	
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 50000 miles (80000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.

\*Reset your oil life monitor system after each engine oil and filter change. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 209).

<b>Exclusive use of E85 (flex fuel vehicles only)</b>	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

## Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

### Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 3000 miles (5000 kilometers).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 1800 miles (3000 kilometers).

### Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Appendices

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

# Appendices

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

## Appendices

---

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

# Appendices

---

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

# Appendices

---

## **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

## Appendices

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

# Appendices

---

## 1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

# Appendices

---

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

# Appendices

---

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

# Appendices

---

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

## 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

## 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

# Appendices

---

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd**

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

# Appendices

---

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

# Appendices

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

# Appendices

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

# Appendices

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

# Appendices

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”	Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Croatia		Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Cyprus,		Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.
Estonia,			E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.
Latvia,	“© EuroGeographics”		
Lithuania,			
Moldova,			
Poland,			
Slovenia			
and/or			
Ukraine			
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”		
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”		
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”		
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”	VI. Australia Territory	
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”		A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”		Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”		
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”		

# Appendices

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

# Appendices

---

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## **VII. China Territory**

### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### ***Limited Warranty***

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

# Appendices

## ***rigCustomer Remedies***

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## ***No Other Warranty:***

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Limited Liability:***

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Export Control***

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## ***IP Protection***

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## ***Entire Agreement***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

# Appendices

---

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

# Appendices

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## **Radio Frequency Statement**

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Appendices

## Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

# Appendices

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or

inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

### Radio Frequency Statement

<b>SYNC Version</b>	<b>FCC Identification Number</b>	<b>IC Identification Number</b>
3.0	ACJ-SYNCG3-L	216B-SYNCG3-L
3.1	ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS	216B-FA170BCARHS
3.2	ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH	216B-FG185SG32MH

# Appendices



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

These devices comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device accepts any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.

## TYPE APPROVALS

### Radio Frequency Certifications for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)

#### Argentina

Schrader AG2SZ4 Numero de Registro  
CNC: H-13498

E207816

#### Brazil



E197509

#### Canada

IC: 850K-11545917

#### European Union EU

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at [emcteam@schrader.co.uk](mailto:emcteam@schrader.co.uk)

E207818

#### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

E253824

#### Jordan

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressre sensor  
Model : AG2SZ4  
Manufacturer:Schrader Electronics Ltd  
Type Approval Number:TRC/LPD/2014/56  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E253823

# Appendices

## Malaysia



E253822

## Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238

E253812

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1249

E253813

## Moldova



E197811

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098  
ANRT 2014  
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

## Oman

OMAN TRA

TA-R/1752/14

D090258

E253817

## Philippines



**NTC**

Type Approved

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

## Russia



E253816

## Serbia



И 011 14

E197844

## Singapore

Complies with  
IDA Standards  
DA 105282

E253820

# Appendices

## South Africa



TA-2014/064

Approved

E198002

## South Korea



E253819

MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2S24

## Taiwan



CCAM14LP0090T3

E203679

## Ukraine



E253818

**109**

## United Arab Emirates

TRA  
REGISTERED NO:EROI30238/14  
DEALER NO:DA0047074/10

E207817

## United States of America

FCC ID: OUC11545917

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Mid Range Radar

## Argentina

MMR ID: C-20001

E269659

## Ghana

MRR ID:  
NCA approved: 0R2-9H-7E1-x4D.

E269662

# Appendices

## Jordan

MRR:  
Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2017/158  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD) ID: C-20001

E269660

## United Arab Emirates

MRR ID:  
ERS4071/17, Dealer License Number (WAC Dealer License Number: DA37380/15)

E269663

## Morocco

MRR ID:  
No. D'Agreement: MR 13639 ANRT 2017 (28 March 2017)

E269661

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Passive Anti-Theft System

### Argentina

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-13170

E274065

## South Africa

MRR ID:  
TA-2017/370

E269664

## Brazil

  
**ANATEL**  
MT-2821/2014

E269675

# Appendices

## Canada

IC: 850K-11545917

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément: 243/MCPT/SC/16  
Date d'agrément: 23/05/2016

E274068

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: NCA/TA/16/22

E269674

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA- OUC11545917

E274067

## Jordan

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2013/235  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E269666

## Malaysia



E269673

# Appendices

## Morocco

N° D'AGRÈMENT: MR 8922 ANRT 2014

E269670

## Serbia



И011 16-3

E269672

## Paraguay



NR: 2012-11-1-0185

E274066

## Singapore

Complies with IDA standards  
Dealer License Number: N3226-13

E269676

## Pakistan



Date of Issuance: 06.01.2015

E275754

## South Africa

TA-2013/1617

APPROVED



E269667

# Appendices

## Ukraine

ID No. 1O094.004449-16



E269671

## United Arab Emirates

TRA  
REGISTERED No. ER49115/16

E269668

## United States of America

FCC ID: OUC11545917

## Vietnam

So.No: A0364120416AF04A2



E269677

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Radio Transceiver Module

### Canada

IC: 3659A-F03AM315RX

IC: 3659A-F04AM902TRX

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément: 247/MCPT/SC/16  
Date d'agrément: 23/05/2016

E272192

# Appendices

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – F03-AM315RX

E272193

## Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority  


TAC NO: 14.1008/2015

E269684

## Jordan

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2013/233  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E272194

## Paraguay



NR: 2012-11-1-0189

E272195

## Morocco

N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 12432 ANRT 2016

E269683

## Serbia



И011 16

E269681

# Appendices

## South Africa



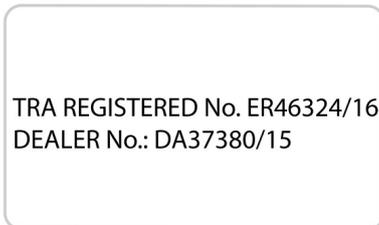
E269685

## Ukraine



E269682

## United Arab Emirates



E272196

## United States of America

FCC ID: LTQF03AM315RX

FCC ID: LTQF04AM902TRX

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Blind Spot Information System

## Canada

RSS-310 compliant, per FCC Test report no.: 1-8707/14-01-03

## Ghana



E269695

## Malaysia



E269697

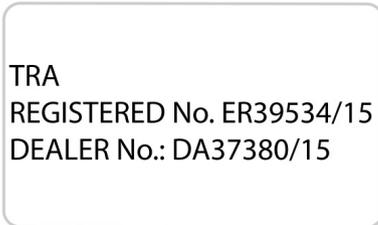
# Appendices

## South Africa



E269696

## United Arab Emirates

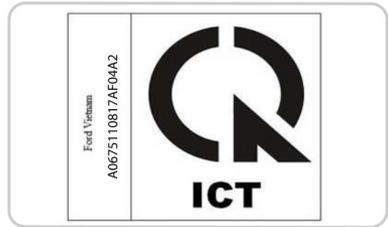


E269694

## United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

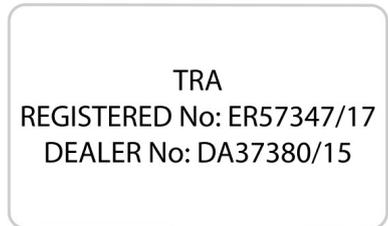
## Vietnam



E269693

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Wireless Charging

### United Arab Emirates



E272903

## South Korea



E273475

# Appendices

## Radio Frequency Certifications for SYNC 3

### Brazil



E252722



E282218

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Cruise Control Module

### Canada

IC: 3432A-0065TR

### United States of America

FCC ID: L2C0065TR

## Radio Frequency Certifications for Body Control Module

### Canada

IC: 7812A-A2C738448

Model #: M : A2C750526

Model #: M : A2C750561

### United States of America

FCC ID: M3NA2C738448

Model #: M : A2C750526

Model #: M : A2C750561

## Radio Frequency Certification for Keys and Remote Controls

### Canada

IC : 7812A-A2C931423

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

IC: 3248A-A08TAA

IC: 3248A-A08TDA

### United States of America

FCC ID : M3N-A2C931423

FCC ID : M3N-A2C931426

FCC ID : N5F-A08TAA

FCC ID : N5F-A08TDA

## Radio Frequency Statement for Audio Unit

### Canada

IC: 3043A-UP375AHU

### United States

FCC ID: NT8-16UP375AHU



# Index

## 4

### 4WD

See: Four-Wheel Drive.....146

## A

### A/C

See: Climate Control.....101

About This Manual.....7

### ABS

See: Brakes.....151

### ABS driving hints

See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock

Brakes.....151

Accessories.....381

Exterior Style.....381

Ford Motor Company will warrant your Ford accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:.....381

Interior Style.....381

Lifestyle.....381

Peace of Mind.....381

### Accessories

See: Replacement Parts

Recommendation.....12

Adjusting the Headlamps.....218

Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....220

Vertical Aim Adjustment.....218

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....66

Airbag Disposal.....45

### Air Conditioning

See: Climate Control.....101

### Air Filter

See: Changing the Engine Air Filter.....230

Air Vents.....101

Center Air Vents.....101

Side Air Vents.....101

### Alarm

See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....64

Ambient Lighting.....78

Anti-Theft Alarm.....64

Alarm System.....64

Arming the Alarm.....65

Disarming the Alarm.....65

Triggering the Alarm.....64

Appendices.....403

Apps.....351

.....351

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.....353

Audible Warnings and Indicators.....87

Automatic Transmission.....87

Headlamps On Warning Chime.....87

Key Outside Car.....87

Low Fuel Reminder.....87

Seatbelt Reminder.....87

Audio Control.....66

Seek, Next or Previous.....67

Audio System.....286

General Information.....286

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC

3.....289

Adjusting the Volume.....289

Changing Radio Stations.....290

Pausing or Playing Media.....290

Seek Down and Previous Track

Button.....290

Seek Up and Next Track Button.....290

Sound Settings.....290

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....289

Switching the Screen On and Off.....290

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC.....286

Adjusting the Volume.....287

Apps.....288

Changing Radio Stations.....287

Pausing or Playing Media.....288

Returning to the Previous Screen.....288

Scrolling Through the Menu Options.....288

Seek Down and Previous Track

Button.....288

Seek Up and Next Track Button.....288

Selecting a Menu Option.....288

Selecting Media.....287

Selecting the Radio.....287

Sound Settings.....288

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....287

System Settings.....288

Using a Cell Phone.....289

Autolamps.....74

Autolamps Delay.....75

Windshield Wiper Activated

Headlamps.....75

# Index

Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles	
With: Electronic Automatic	
Temperature Control (EATC).....	103
Directing Air to the Footwell Air	
Vents.....	105
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air	
Vents.....	105
Directing Air to the Windshield Air	
Vents.....	105
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	104
Setting the Temperature.....	105
Switching Maximum Cooling On and	
Off.....	103
Switching Maximum Defrost On and	
Off.....	103
Switching the Air Conditioning On and	
Off.....	103
Switching the Climate Control On and	
Off.....	103
Switching the Recirculated Air On and	
Off.....	103
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	103
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	128
Automatic Transmission.....	142
Automatic Transmission Adaptive	
Learning.....	145
Emergency Park Position Release	
Lever.....	144
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or	
Snow.....	145
Selector Lever Positions.....	142
SelectShift™ Automatic	
Transmission.....	143
Automatic Transmission Fluid	
Check.....	214
Auto-Start-Stop.....	129
Disabling Auto-Start-Stop.....	130
Enabling Auto-Start-Stop.....	129
Autowipers.....	69
Settings.....	70
Auxiliary Power Points.....	120
110 Volt AC Power Point.....	120
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	120
Locations.....	120

## B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	215
Blind Spot Information System.....	162
Switching the System Off and On.....	163
System Errors.....	163
Using the Blind Spot Information	
System.....	162
BLIS	
See: Blind Spot Information System.....	162
Body Styling Kits.....	240
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	205
Booster Seats.....	23
Types of Booster Seats.....	24
Brake Fluid Check.....	214
Brakes.....	151
General Information.....	151
Breaking-In.....	181
Brakes and Clutch.....	181
Tires.....	181
Bulb Specification Chart.....	229

## C

Cabin Air Filter.....	108
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	278
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold	
Climates.....	280
Capacities.....	278
Specifications.....	278
Capacities and Specifications -	
2.0L.....	281
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold	
Climates.....	284
Capacities.....	282
Specifications.....	282
Capacities and Specifications.....	270
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	233
Catalytic Converter.....	139
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	140
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance	
(I/M) Testing.....	140
Center Console.....	122

# Index

Changing a Bulb.....	220	Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	236
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.....	227	Cleaning the Interior.....	236
Direction indicators.....	224	Mirrors.....	236
Front Fog Lamps.....	222	Cleaning the Wheels.....	237
Glove box lamp.....	222	Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	235
Headlamp.....	220	Clearing All MyKeys.....	53
Interior Lamp.....	228	Climate Control.....	101
Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Tailgate Lamp.....	229	Principle of Operation.....	101
Map Lamp (driver side).....	228	Cold Weather Precautions.....	181
Reading Lamps.....	228	Coolant Check	
Rear lamps.....	225	See: Engine Coolant Check.....	210
Reversing Lamp.....	226	Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	44
Side Marker.....	222	Creating a MyKey.....	52
Side Repeater.....	224	Vehicles With a Key.....	52
Vanity lamp.....	227	Vehicles With Push-Button Start.....	52
Changing a Fuse.....	203	Cross Traffic Alert.....	163
Fuses.....	203	Blocked Sensors.....	165
Changing the 12V Battery.....	215	Switching the System Off and On.....	165
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	216	System Errors.....	165
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	230	System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....	165
Changing the Air Filter Element.....	230	System Limitations.....	165
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	217	Using the Cross Traffic Alert System.....	163
Rear Window Wiper Blade.....	217	Cruise Control.....	67
Windshield Wiper Blades.....	217	Principle of Operation.....	160
Checking MyKey System Status.....	53	Cruise control	
MyKey Distance.....	53	See: Using Cruise Control.....	160
Number of Admin Keys.....	54	Customer Assistance.....	189
Number of MyKeys.....	53		
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	217	<b>D</b>	
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....	34	Data Recording.....	9
Child Restraint Positioning.....	25	Event Data Recording.....	10
Child Safety.....	16	Service Data Recording.....	9
General Information.....	16	Daytime Running Lamps.....	76
Child Safety Locks.....	27	Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable).....	76
Rear Left-Hand Door.....	27	Type 2 - Configurable.....	76
Rear Right-Hand Door.....	27	Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	428
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	237	Radio Frequency Statement.....	428
Cleaning Products.....	232	Direction Indicators.....	77
Cleaning the Engine.....	235	Doors and Locks.....	55
Cleaning the Exterior.....	233	Drive Belt Routing - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	230
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	233	Drive Belt Routing - 2.0L.....	231
Exterior Chrome Parts.....	234		
Exterior Plastic Parts.....	234		
Stripes or Graphics.....	234		
Underbody.....	234		
Under Hood.....	234		

# Index

Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	37
Children and Airbags.....	38
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....	37
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags.....	42
Driving Aids.....	162
Driving Hints.....	181
Driving Through Water.....	181
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	76
<b>E</b>	
Economical Driving.....	181
Emission Law.....	138
Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance.....	139
Tampering With a Noise Control System.....	138
End User License Agreement.....	403
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) .....	403
Engine Block Heater.....	127
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	128
Engine Coolant Check.....	210
Adding Coolant.....	210
Coolant Change.....	212
Engine Coolant Temperature Management.....	213
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	212
Recycled Coolant.....	212
Severe Climates.....	212
Engine Cooling Fan.....	210
Engine Emission Control.....	138
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
Engine Oil Check.....	208
Adding Engine Oil.....	209
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L.....	208
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	271
Engine Specifications - 2.0L.....	270
Entertainment.....	325
AM/FM Radio.....	327
Apps.....	335
Bluetooth Stereo or USB.....	333
HD Radio™ Information (If Available).....	330
SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....	327
Sources.....	326
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	335
USB Port.....	335
Environment.....	15
Essential Towing Checks.....	176
Before Towing a Trailer.....	177
Hitches.....	176
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....	178
Safety Chains.....	176
Trailer Brakes.....	177
Trailer Lamps.....	177
Trailer Towing Connector.....	176
When Towing a Trailer.....	177
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	9
Export Unique Options.....	14
Exterior Mirrors.....	80
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....	80
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	80
<b>F</b>	
Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan.....	210
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	29
Seatbelt Locking Modes.....	30
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	30
Using the Sliding Clip.....	29
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	243
Floor Mats.....	182
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	76
Ford Credit.....	11
US Only.....	11
Ford Protect.....	383
Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (CANADA ONLY).....	384
Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only).....	383
Four-Wheel Drive.....	146
Front Fog Lamps.....	76

# Index

Front Passenger Sensing System.....	38	Hazard Flashers.....	184
Fuel and Refueling.....	131	Hazard Flashers Warning Lamp.....	184
Fuel Consumption.....	136	Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off.....	184
Advertised Capacity.....	136	Headlamp Adjusting	
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	136	See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	218
Fuel Economy.....	137	Headlamp Exit Delay.....	75
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	132	Headlamp Removal	
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	131	See: Removing a Headlamp.....	220
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	131	Headrest	
Fuel Shutoff.....	184	See: Head Restraints.....	109
Fuse Box Locations.....	196	Head Restraints.....	109
Battery Fuse Box.....	196	Folding the Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint.....	111
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	196	Installing the Head Restraint.....	111
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	196	Lowering the Head Restraint.....	111
Fuses.....	196	Raising the Head Restraint.....	111
Fuse Specification Chart.....	196	Removing the Head Restraint.....	111
Battery Fuse Box.....	203	Tilting the Front Seat Head Restraint.....	111
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	197	Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	107
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	201	Windshield Wiper De-icer.....	107
<b>G</b>		Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....	107
Gauges.....	83	Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC).....	107
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	84	Heated Seats.....	119
Fuel Gauge.....	84	Heated Steering Wheel.....	67
Information Display.....	83	Heating	
Gearbox		See: Climate Control.....	101
See: Transmission.....	142	Hill Start Assist.....	152
General Information on Radio		Switching the System On and Off.....	153
Frequencies.....	46	Using Hill Start Assist.....	153
General Maintenance Information.....	385	Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....	105
Multi-Point Inspection.....	387	Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice.....	106
Owner Checks and Services.....	386	Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather.....	106
Protecting Your Investment.....	385	General Hints.....	105
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....	385	Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	106
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?.....	385	Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	106
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	192	Recommended Settings for Heating.....	106
Getting the Services You Need.....	189		
Away From Home.....	189		
Glasses Holder.....	122		
<b>H</b>			
Handbrake			
See: Parking Brake.....	152		

# Index

Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate	
- Vehicles With: Electronic Manual	
Temperature Control (EMTC).....	106
Fogging or Clearing the Windshield of	
Thin Ice.....	107
Fogging the Side Windows in Cold	
Weather.....	107
General Hints.....	106
Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	107
Quickly Heating the Interior.....	106
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	107
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	106
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	151
Home Screen.....	319
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	205
<b>I</b>	
Ignition Switch.....	123
Starting the Engine.....	124
Switching the Ignition Off.....	123
Switching the Ignition On.....	123
Switching the Ignition to Accessory	
Mode.....	123
In California (U.S. Only).....	190
Information Display Control.....	67
Information Displays.....	88
General Information.....	88
Information Messages.....	91
Accessory Power.....	92
Airbag.....	92
Alarm.....	92
Battery and Charging System.....	93
Brake System.....	93
Engine.....	94
Fuel System.....	94
Hill Start Assist.....	94
Keyless Vehicle.....	95
Lighting.....	95
Maintenance.....	95
MyKey.....	96
Park Aid.....	97
Park Brake.....	97
Power Steering.....	98
Stability Control.....	98
Starting System.....	98
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	93
Traction Control.....	99
Transmission.....	99
Vehicle Settings.....	100
Installing Child Restraints.....	17
Child Seats.....	17
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....	18
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for	
Children (LATCH).....	20
Using Tether Straps.....	22
Instrument Cluster.....	83
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	75
Interior Lamps.....	77
Courtesy lamp.....	77
Reading lamps.....	77
Vanity lamp.....	78
Interior Mirror.....	81
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	81
Introduction.....	7
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	185
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	186
Jump Starting.....	187
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	185
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	187
<b>K</b>	
Keyless Entry.....	58
Disabled Keys.....	59
General Information.....	58
Intelligent Access - Locking and Unlocking	
the Doors with the Key Blade.....	59
Locking Using Intelligent Access.....	58
Unlocking only Driver Door.....	59
Unlocking Using Intelligent Access.....	58
Keys and Remote Controls.....	46
Principle of Operation.....	46
<b>L</b>	
Lighting Control.....	73
Headlamp Flasher.....	74
High Beams.....	74
Parking Lamps.....	73

# Index

Lighting.....	73	Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	112
General Information.....	73	Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	112
Load Carriers		Recline Adjustment.....	113
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	168	Message Center	
Load Carrying.....	167	See: Information Displays.....	88
Load Limit.....	169	Mirrors	
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles.....	173	See: Windows and Mirrors.....	79
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer.....	169	Mobile Communications Equipment.....	13
Locking and Unlocking.....	55	Moonroof.....	81
Autolock.....	55	Bounce-Back.....	82
Autounlock.....	57	Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	82
Illuminated Entry.....	57	Venting the Moonroof.....	82
Illuminated Exit.....	57	Motorcraft Parts - 1.0L	
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key.....	56	EcoBoost™.....	274
Power Door Locks.....	55	Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L.....	275
Remote Control.....	55	MyKey — Troubleshooting.....	54
Smart Unlock.....	57	All Vehicles.....	54
Luggage Anchor Points.....	167	MyKey™.....	51
Luggage Covers.....	167	Principle of Operation.....	51
Lug Nuts.....	269		
<b>M</b>		<b>N</b>	
Maintenance.....	205	Navigation.....	341
General Information.....	205	Destination Mode.....	343
Manual Climate Control - Vehicles With:		Map Mode.....	341
Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC).....	102	Map search Mode.....	348
Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed.....	102	Navigation Map Updates.....	351
Adjusting the Temperature.....	102	Navigation Menu.....	349
Changing the Direction of Airflow.....	102	Route Guidance Mode.....	346
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	102	Waypoints.....	351
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	102	Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	388
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	102	<b>O</b>	
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	102	Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	209
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	102	Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System.....	209
Manual Seats.....	111	Oil Check	
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat.....	113	See: Engine Oil Check.....	208
		Opening and Closing the Hood.....	205
		Closing the Hood.....	206
		Opening the Hood.....	205
		Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	194
		Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....	194

# Index

## P

Parking Aids.....	155
Principle of Operation.....	155
Parking Brake.....	152
All Vehicles.....	152
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission.....	152
Vehicles With Manual Transmission.....	152
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
Principle of Operation.....	62
SecuriLock®.....	62
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
Perchlorate.....	11
Personal Safety System™.....	35
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....	35
Phone.....	335
During a Phone Call.....	339
Making Calls.....	338
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	336
Phone Menu.....	336
Receiving Calls.....	339
Smartphone Connectivity.....	340
Text Messaging.....	340
Post-Crash Alert System.....	188
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	55
Power Seats.....	113
Adjust Four Way Position.....	115
Adjust the Lumbar Support.....	114
Adjust the Seat Back Recliner.....	115
Power Windows.....	79
Accessory Delay.....	80
Bounce-Back.....	79
One-Touch Down.....	79
One-Touch Up.....	79
Window Lock.....	80
Programming a MyKey.....	53
Optional Settings.....	53
Protecting the Environment.....	15
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	124
Failure to Start.....	124
Starting the Engine.....	124
Stopping the Engine When the Vehicle is Moving.....	125

Stopping the Engine with the Vehicle Stationary.....	125
Stopping the Ignition On (Accessory Mode).....	124

## R

Rear Parking Aid.....	155
Rear Seats.....	116
Flip and Fold Seat.....	116
Folding the Seatback Down.....	117
Lifting the Seat Cushion.....	116
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	167
Adjustable Load Floor.....	167
Rear View Camera.....	156
Enhanced Park Aids.....	159
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	157
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	156
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	72
Rear Window Washer.....	72
Rear Window Wiper.....	72
Recommended Towing Weights.....	175
Refueling.....	134
Refueling System Overview.....	134
Refueling System Warning.....	136
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	134
Remote Control.....	46
Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade.....	46
Replacing the Battery.....	47
Removing a Headlamp.....	220
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	237
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	12
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	50
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	194
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	194
Roadside Assistance.....	183
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	184

# Index

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage.....	184
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance.....	184
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	183
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....	183
Roadside Emergencies.....	183
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	168
Adjusting the Crossbar.....	168
Running-In See: Breaking-In.....	181
Running Out of Fuel.....	132
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	133
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	132
<b>S</b>	
Safety Canopy™.....	42
Safety Precautions.....	131
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	392
Scheduled Maintenance.....	385
Seatbelt Extension.....	34
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	31
Seatbelt Reminder.....	32
Belt-Minder™.....	32
Seatbelts.....	28
Principle of Operation.....	28
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	31
Conditions of operation.....	32
Seats.....	109
Security.....	62
Settings.....	354
911 Assist.....	359
Ambient Lighting.....	366
Bluetooth.....	356
Clock.....	356
Display.....	367
General.....	364
Media Player.....	355
Mobile Apps.....	362
Navigation.....	360
Phone.....	356
Radio.....	359
Sound.....	354
Valet Mode.....	368
Vehicle.....	366
Voice Control.....	367
Wi-Fi & Hotspot.....	364
Side Airbags.....	40
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	109
Snow Chains See: Using Snow Chains.....	264
Special Notices.....	12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....	12
Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles.....	13
On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector.....	13
Special Instructions.....	12
Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance.....	13
Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow.....	13
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	391
Exceptions.....	392
Speed Control See: Cruise Control.....	160
Stability Control.....	154
Principle of Operation.....	154
Starter Switch See: Ignition Switch.....	123
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	126
Cold or Hot Engine.....	126
Engine Idle Speed after Starting.....	127
Failure to Start.....	127
Fuel Flooded Engine.....	126
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	123
General Information.....	123
Steering.....	166
Electric Power Steering.....	166
Steering Wheel.....	66
Storage Compartments.....	122
Sunroof See: Moonroof.....	81
Supplementary Restraints System.....	36
Principle of Operation.....	36
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC™ 3.....	309
General Information.....	309
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	368
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	296
911 Assist.....	297

# Index

SYNC Mobile Apps.....	298	Towing the Vehicle on Four	
SYNC™.....	292	Wheels.....	180
General Information.....	292	Emergency Towing.....	180
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	301	Recreational Towing.....	180
<b>T</b>		Towing.....	174
Tailgate.....	60	Traction Control.....	150
Closing the Tailgate.....	61	Principle of Operation.....	150
Opening the Tailgate.....	60	Trailer Sway Control.....	174
Technical Specifications		Transmission Code Designation.....	277
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	270	Transmission Specifications - 1.0L	
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto		EcoBoost™.....	273
Line Program (U.S. Only).....	191	Transmission Specifications - 2.0L.....	272
Tire Care.....	249	Transmission.....	142
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	251	Transporting the Vehicle.....	179
Information About Uniform Tire Quality		Trip Computer.....	91
Grading.....	249	All Values.....	91
Information Contained on the Tire		Average Fuel Consumption.....	91
Sidewall.....	252	Distance to Empty.....	91
Temperature A B C.....	250	Instantaneous Fuel.....	91
Traction AA A B C.....	250	Outside Air Temperature.....	91
Treadwear.....	250	Resetting the Trip Computer.....	91
Tire Inflation When Punctured		Trip Odometer.....	91
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	243	Trip Timer.....	91
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	265	<b>Type Approvals.....</b>	<b>429</b>
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure		Radio Frequency Certification for Keys and	
Monitoring System.....	266	Remote Controls.....	439
Understanding Your Tire Pressure		Radio Frequency Certifications for Blind	
Monitoring System.....	267	Spot Information System.....	437
Tire Repair Kit		Radio Frequency Certifications for Body	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	243	Control Module.....	439
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	243	Radio Frequency Certifications for Cruise	
First stage: reinflating the tire with sealing		Control Module.....	439
compound and air.....	245	Radio Frequency Certifications for Mid	
General Information.....	243	Range Radar.....	431
Second stage: checking tire pressure.....	248	Radio Frequency Certifications for Passive	
Tips for use of the kit.....	244	Anti-Theft System.....	432
What to do after the tire has been		Radio Frequency Certifications for Radio	
sealed.....	249	Transceiver Module.....	435
What to do when a tire is punctured.....	244	Radio Frequency Certifications for SYNC	
<b>Tires</b>		3.....	439
See: Wheels and Tires.....	241	Radio Frequency Certifications for Tire	
Towing a Trailer.....	174	Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s).....	429
Load Placement.....	174	Radio Frequency Certifications for Wireless	
Towing Points.....	178	Charging.....	438
Front Towing Point.....	178	Radio Frequency Statement for Audio	
Rear Towing Point.....	179	Unit.....	439

# Index

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	206
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L.....	207
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	129
USB Port.....	290
Using Cruise Control.....	160
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	161
Switching Cruise Control On.....	160
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	146
Driving In Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive (4WD).....	146
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	54
Using Snow Chains.....	264
Using Stability Control.....	154
Using Summer Tires.....	264
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	300
Audio Voice Commands.....	300
Media Sources.....	300
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	295
Accessing Features through the Phone Menu.....	296
Pairing a Phone.....	295
Phone Controls.....	296
Phone Voice Commands.....	296
Using Traction Control.....	150
Switching the System Off Using a Switch.....	150
Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls.....	150
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....	150
Using Voice Recognition.....	293
Audio Voice Commands.....	320
Initiating a Voice Session.....	293
Mobile App Voice Commands.....	324
Navigation Voice Commands.....	323
Phone Voice Commands.....	321
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands.....	324
System Interaction and Feedback.....	294
Voice Settings Commands.....	325
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....	192

## V

Vehicle Care.....	232
General Information.....	232
Vehicle Certification Label.....	277
Vehicle Identification Number.....	276
Vehicle Storage.....	238
Battery.....	239
Body.....	238
Brakes.....	239
Cooling system.....	239
Engine.....	238
Fuel system.....	239
General.....	238
Miscellaneous.....	239
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....	239
Tires.....	239
Ventilation See: Climate Control.....	101
Vents See: Air Vents.....	101
VIN See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	276
Voice Control.....	67

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	84
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	84
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....	85
Auto Start-Stop.....	86
Battery.....	85
Blind Spot.....	87
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	85
Direction Indicator.....	85
Door Ajar Warning Lamp.....	87
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....	86
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	85
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	85
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....	85
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	85
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....	86
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....	86
Parking Lamps.....	85
Powertrain Malfunction.....	86
Service Engine Soon.....	86

# Index

---

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....	87
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....	87
Washer Fluid Check.....	215
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	233
Waxing.....	234
Wheels and Tires.....	241
General Information.....	241
Windows and Mirrors.....	79
Windshield Washers.....	71
Heated Washer Jets.....	71
Settings.....	71
Windshield Wipers.....	69
Intermittent Wipe.....	69
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	69
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	217
Wipers and Washers.....	69
Wrecker Towing	
See: Transporting the Vehicle.....	179



